# SYNTAGMA GRAMMATICVM,

OR

An easie, and methodicall *explanation of* Lillies *Grammar*, whereby the misterie of this *Art is more plainely set forth, both* for the better helpe of all Schoole-*maisters, in the true order of teaching*, and the Schollers farre more easie attainement of the Latine tongue.

By *Thomas Granger* maister of *Arts. Pet. Coll. Cant.*

*Scientiarum janitrix Grammatica.*

LONDON
Printed by *Thomas Dawson.*
1616.

# *Ornatiſsimo viro, bonis omnibus & literatis amiciſsimo, ac Mæcenati meo benigniſsimo, Iohanni Leuenthorpe Equiti Aurato perpetuam fælicitatem.*

*Cogitanti mihi tantillùm (vir Magnanime) cui primitias agri mei vtcumque frugiferi ſincero corde, non blandulis manibus offerrem, derepentè tu occurrebas eo munere digniſsimus. Primùm, quia vt ipſe non ſolùm es genio, & ingenio ſingulari; ſed etiam πολυγράμματος (licet modeſtè ſolitus es dicere te non σοφον, ſed φιλὸν φιλοσοφῶν eſſe, quod ego veram ἐξοχὴν veram εὐγενείαν ſemper duxi: ita & benevolo, propenſoque es animo in omnes literatos, eoſque præcipue, qui, quod tribuit Muſa ſagax, non inuidè apud ſe detinent, ſed θεομιμήτως in Commune conferunt. Deinde officij mei ratio poſtulat, in ruſticorum more beneficia tua in me immeritò ſæpè collata deglutirem, vt aliquod animi gratti teſtimonium exhiberem. Præterea, quod cerno jam animo, quàm tutus mihi ſub nominis tui patrocinio futurus ſit tranſitus. Ac ſpero me hoc tuæ inſignitum Clientelæ Σημείῳ peramicè hoſpitio exceptum iri, præſertim à ſacræ quolibet cultore Minervæ. Quo Conſilio haud immaturo quidem levidenſe munuſculum hoc ex inge-*

*nioli mei cornucopiola depromptum, meritissimè, lubentissimè que tibi do, dedicoque, obnixè petens, vt illud fauente, ac benigno animo accipias quemadmodum à me animo tui obseruantissimo exhibetur: hac in re Persarum regem Artaxerxem imitatus, qui, cùm pauper quidam sinæta nomine, aquam ei vtraque vola è flumine Cyro exhaustam obtulisset, (Nam ex lege omnes pro suis facultatibus Δῶρα, i, munera regi prætere quitãti offerentes coràm apponebant) grato inquit, animo munus tuum accipio, et in pretiosissimis numero iussis insuper Eunuchis vt in auream phialam de manibus aquã exciperent: ita si tu (clarissime vir) pro sũma tua humanitate, ingenuoq; candore Δῶρον τοῦτο qualecunque non in auream phialam, sed in fictilem acceptationis tuæ vrnulam excipere dignatus fueris, totius vóti me compotem feceris. Vale (vir Generosissime) quem Deus opt. Max. protegat, & Conseruet æternùm. Gal. Iun. 1615.*

Dignitati tuæ servus
addictissimus.

*Thomas Granger.*

# The Epistle to the Reader,

## *containing the generall Theorike,* or true groundes of teaching.

THere be two maine errours (Gentle Reader) both in teaching, and learning, and not so great, as common, Doubtfullnes, and Confusion, doubtfullnes sometime in the Master, and alwayes in the Scholar. First in the Master it is a great errour to thinke that the Scholar can profite any thinge at all by that, which he himselfe not well vnderstanding teacheth doubtfullie. Againe it is an errour not much lesse, that when he perfectly vnderstanding what he teacheth, regardeth not much, whether, and how the Scholar vnderstandeth, and conceiueth the same.

For the reformation of the former, the Master must vse time, and diligence, yea and meditation also, if need so require, that it being first made his owne, he may freely, and confidently propound it to the Scholler, which proceeding not rawly, but ripe lie from him, the Scholler may apprehend, conceiue and digest the same the better. Moreouer when it proceedeth indistinctly, and harshly (hiulcè) from the maister, the Scholler conceiues a greater difficultie thereof, whereby he is discouraged at the first entrie, and beginning of his labour grudging also in his mind at the Maisters rigour, and vniust dealing, that he should propound, and require perfitnes of that in him, which seemeth difficult enough to himselfe.

For the amendment of the seconde the Master

must imagine that those things which are easiest to his vnderstanding are most hard, and difficult to the Scholars. Therefore it requires good skill, and art to condiscend from the strength of his mans vnderstanding, reason, and imagination, and to apply, and intermingle them to and with the Scholars, gently and softly drawing him after him: knowing this, that the Scholar hath the same faculties of the Soule, perfect, but weake, and therefore hath naturallie a desire, and reioycing in that whereby he receiueth increase of strength to perfection, as contrarily he hath no pleasure in that which is to strong for him, no more than the sucking childe hath of strong meates. This appeares euidently in their plaies, and sports, wherein they do sort, and gather themselues according to their agreable or differing natures, and witts which thing is naturall, and common to them with trees, plants, beasts, &c. which reioice in the fellowshippe of their owne kind (but being mixt with others, are solitary, euen in companie) and in their owne kind, delight most in them, that come nearest to their individuall natures, and properties. Hominum quoque mos est, as Gnatho knowes well enough. And if the Master in his discretion and iudgement can so play the Pantemime, applying himselfe to the Scholar, and stealinge him as it were by guile, he shall easily perceiue the Scholar to be much more willing, and toward, and in short time finde fruitfull successe of his labours.

But if the parents (which most commonly come in like Lords of misrule disturbinge, and confounding both Maister and Scholar) wold dissemble, and restraine, a little their naturall affections with the bridle of reason taking vpon them the person

an

and nature of a maister, as they should: against the maister would be answereable to them, taking vpon him the person and affection of a father, as he ought; the Scholer knowing the resolution of of his parents, wold buckle himselfe to please his maister, and to follow his booke with diligence, being driuen thereto on the one side with the strangenes of his parents, and allured on the other side with the kindnes and familiaritie of the Maister. Neither can the strangenes of the Parents, be such, but their naturall loue and affection will easily appeare to the child: nor yet can the familiaritie of the maister be such, but that his frendnes (as we say) and therefore matter of feare and awe will appeare: otherwise Nimia familiaritas parit contemptum.

The child that is thus contained in his duty by this mixt loue, and feare, shal follow his booke with willingnes, ioy, and delight and shall profite marueilously in a short space, being but of indifferent capacitie. And if the Parents shall manifest their loue to their children especially vpon their Masters commendations for their learning, and duti-fullnes (sometimes counterfeting the same, as occasion shall require) it shall encourage them to delight, and glory in the performance thereof. But where the case stands contrary to this that I haue said, it hath also a contrarie effect. There was yet neuer any that by loue and faire meanes onely attayned to learning, nether that by meere compulsion, if they attained to some, long retained the same; at least wise did any good there with, and in neither of them came it to any proofe.

Furthermore, Doubtfullnes in the Schollar is a maine errour in learning, seeing that hee which

doubteth knoweth nothinge, and therefore learneth nothinge, (for learning is knowledge) vnlesse it be to talke he cannot tell of what. And this is too common a fault. For in most Schooles where as a Schollar hath repeated his lesson perfectlie, and vnderstandinglie to the iudgement of a stranger, if hee shalbe well examined in the same, he will either giue many answers (I meane gesses) or else will his lipps go fast, but he dars say nothing (a foolish kind of lip labour) least he should speake a misse, not knowing the right from the wronge. Where vpon he is thought to be defectiue in vnderstanding, or memorie and is counted a dullard, whereas it is but his doubtfull learning. For otherwise, if he were sure of that, which he would speake or had a more distinct knowledge thereof, he would giue a bold, and wittie answere, yea and take pleasure in being opposed.

The greatest reason of this vncertainty, and doubtfullnes, is because that children are phantasticall, and full of imaginations, their vnderstandings weake, their apprehensions confused, and reason vnperfect, and because their blood is hote, and boilinge, they are fickle, and restlesse, minding nothing, but varieties, & nouelties, being moued to and fro with euery light obiect, noting, and telling what they heare, and see, imitating that they see done of others, and are soone wearied with short continuance euen in that they most desired, in so much that euen their play, if they were held to it by rule, would be as wearisome to them, as learning: or if their maister should appoint them their play, though otherwise they themselues would happily haue chosen the same before any other game, yet will it soone be tedious to them.

Upon

Upon this consideration (to avoyd doubtfull learning) the maister must stirre them vp to attention in their lecture giuing, vsing often to demand (as he shall see them Careles) what he last spake? what be the words following? what point is at such a word &c. giuing reasons why he construeth thus, & not thus, expounding their lesson to them in plaine words, and in such stile, and manner, as is familiar to them, illustrating the meaning by such vulgar examples, and comparisons, as are known to them, or may be easily apprehended of them: other wise it were to teach them other things and to put new fancies into them, which will make them more ignorant, and forgetfull of that, which is then taught them. For childrens witts (note well) are confounded with varieties at once, being contrary to the course of nature, as shall hereafter appeare. After lecture giuen, let him heare some one, or other verbatim as it was giuen and so remaining euer in the Schoole with them, cause them to doe his appointments diligently, and that by themselues seuerallie without helpe one of another making them bold to aske him, what they doubt of. Neither let him immediately tell them, but by many interrogations, and douts (as wee say) bringe them to tell themselues of it. This will cause the child to doe his worke with vnderstanding and discourse, and make him more carefull to remember what he hath learned, and what his master tolles him, whereas this immediate telling, prompting: and looking in dictionaries makes them doe all things by rote, and like Parrates, nine besides Grammar.

Also let him neuer suffer them to haue any toyes about them, or neere them, either brought from

home

home, or deuised there: for if such things be present, they will haue them alwayes in their hands, or in their mindes. So that by meanes of such cowring imaginations, nothing that they doe, much lesse that is told them, can make any fast impression in them, but brokenly, and confusedly floateth in their heads Whereby it commeth to passe, that that, which they haue alreadie learned, is no president, or furtherance to them in that which followeth after, euery lesson after many weekes, moneths, and yeares being as strange to them as the first was, for any certaine knowledge, or vnderstanding they haue of what they say.

And to speake as the thing is, this is the cause, why that many, which are fit for the Vniuersitie (falsely so supposed) and some which are at the Vniuersitie, (I will not say some Garduates) stand as much neede of a Grammar in their studies as of any other booke. For camming to publike exercises there, or but in their Tutors Chambers, and therefore carefull to doe well, and fearefull to amisse, they begin but then to feele their wants, and most of them to complaine of their maisters negligence in teaching, and their owne in learning.

Now if any one aske me, why they can make Epistles, Themes, and speake Latine in the country, and come so to be plunged afterward. I answere it is because they seemed to doe well by gesse, hauing gotten by long continuance a certaine habite of gessinge, that is, parsing, and construing, and giuing rules by certaine notes, and markes (as the art doth play his feates by obseruing his maistors gestures, staffe, becks, or looks) I meane by them maisters words, and certaine formes of speaking in his questions, and demaunds, rather then

then by any vnderſtanding of the order of Grammar, or true meaning of the rule.

And ſo by much teaching and long continuance (their apprehenſion, and diſcourſe of reaſon waxing riper as they waxe elder) they can begin to conſtrue alone, but by very ſmall direction of Grammer. And comming to make Schole-exercíſes can partly ſteale vnreaſonable: and partly immitats their autours making little or no vſe of Grammar or any part thereof but doing all by apiſh imitation, and groſe theft, being ſure of this only, that their Autour writes true Latine, and good matter and ſo by geſsing what he ſpeakes, tye it to ſome other ſuch like matter, ſtollen out of ſome other place, whereby it comes in the end to be a great miſhapen body, with neuer a ſound ioynt in it, knit together with ſhewes of ſand. This is the ſpoile of their inuention, reaſon, and vnderſtanding, that few recouer till by reaſon of age, ſtudy, and meditation (vnleſſe they be very pregnant witted) they come to ripenes of iudgement. But ſome feele the diſcommodity of this corruption, as long as they liue.

The ſecond maine errour is Confuſion. The principles of all Arts, and Sciences, are naturall to the Soule, infuſed into it in the creation, which comming to a well diſpoſed, and rightly organized body (as the good inſtrument) retaineth the ſame pure, and vndefiled (which is called the light of nature) not being diſordered, and darkned with the vnaptneſſe, and contagion thereof. Therefore of the diuerſe diſpoſition, and habitude of the bodie, ariſe thoſe infinite varieties, and differences of wits, one being eſpecially apt to one thing, another to another thing, ſome (as we ſay) to all things, others to nothing. Now the gathering

thring of sequeles, and conclusions from those lights, or principles, by the discourse of reason through obseruation and experience, is generally called wisedome, or art, which it effecteth by the two properties thereof, Distinction, and Methode. By distinction it separateth, and diuideth confused, and differing things, as all thinges in the beginning were separated out of the confused masse or Chaos (wherin they were vniformally contained) one from another. And by methode it orderly disposeth, and placeth all thinges of the same nature and kinde in order, euen as in the frame of the worlde, wee see howe euery thing is disposed in wonderfull order. Whereupon art is rightly defined to be the comprehension of certaine rules, or precepts, of the same kinde, to some profitable end. And as it is after this manner obtained, so is it also taught another by the same.

First, there must be principles, or light of nature in the Scholler, otherwise light is not comprehended of darknes. Then the maister must apply himselfe to him by distinct, and methodicall teaching. Otherwise he shall increase confusion, and breed in him a kinde of vndistinct and confused knowledge, or rather imaginatiõs, which bring forth nothing: not mending, but marring the witte, making the Scholler more foolish, not through defect of nature in the Scholler, but disorderly teaching, which in stead of helping, doth hinder it. Which confusion being made habituall, the Scholler comming by reason of age, to some maturitie of reason & iudgement, cannot without much adoe reforme, though he be of good wit, being like to those, that hauing bin disorderly and rudely brought vp in the countrey, and afterward comming to some great place,

or

or attayning to some higher calling, doe feele the discommoditie thereof a long time, whereas they that haue beene brought vp in hill, as if it were in hall, can with little endeuour fit themselues to any thing, without any difficultie.

Grammar is therefore for most iust cause called, the Key of Arts, not onely because it teacheth Languages, without the knowledge whereof, wee can vnderstand nothing, but that which is written in our mother tongue: and so should bee depriued of those Arts, which are inuented or perfected by men of other Languages: but also because it is a liuely patterne and president to the wit in the studie of other Arts whatsoeuer, though not for the matter, yet for the manner, and methode. And if the Grammar shall bee distinctly, perfectly, and methodically taught and learned, it is not onely halfe the Languages, but halfe the matter. For euen as he that hath perfectly learned Grammar, hath gotten halfe the Language: so he that is perfect in the methode of an Art, Oration, Epistle, &c. hath halfe the knowledge, and vnderstanding thereof. Furthermore experience teacheth that what we are taught, and as we are taught when we are young, maketh such an impressiō in our wits, & memories, as that it becommeth naturall vnto vs, neither can we wholy relinquish, nor forget the same. This both common obseruation, & daily experience proueth. For they that haue beene brought vp with good schoolemaisters, doe also proue good Schoole-maisters. Contrarily, they that haue beene taught confusedly, and ignorantly, though more by their owne apte nesse, than by their maisters good preparation, they come to be good Schollers in the Vniuersitie, yet are they new to begin againe, for matter of Grammar,

mar, and teaching, which they finde to bee as troublesome a peece of worke, as all their Universities studie and practise, if euer they make good countrey Scholler. And this is not one of the least, & rarest causes, why there are more good Schollers, then good Schoole-maisters. But to speake of this abuse of confused teaching in particulars, wherein it is commonly offended, would bee too tedious in thisplace, which together with the reformation thereof, I entend to speake of in another treatise.

To proceed farther. This error of preposterous teaching, is altogether committed in the preuention of nature. For all doe build vpon the foundation of custome, & coniecture, not vpon the rocke. Therefore though some doe seeme to doe very well sometimes. yet it is more than they perfectly know, and that which a man doth not knowingly (Scienter) it cannot truely be said to be well done: It may be Bonum factum a good deed, yet if it want the spirit, & life of Bene factum of well done, it hath not a liuely effect, or efficacie in the Scholler, except the Scholler be of a riper wit, and quicker imagination than the maister, as sometimes falleth out: but he that speaketh & teacheth knowingly, and maturely, exhibiteth the commentarie of his words in his countenance, and gesture.

Nature then is the rocke or foundation of Art. He therfore that teacheth him to whom nature hath denied abilitie to learne: or that teacheth any thing to him that hath abilitie, before that nature shew forth her powers, doe both build on the sand, and teach the Parrat to speake. And such learning is forgotten, as soone as it is gotten. For the hasting of nature beyond her setled, and constant course, is

not

not helping, but hindering. That learning therefore that is gotten, or rather taught in the outrunning of nature, is a floating imagination, or rather wandring phantasme, or dreame, whose ground is the maisters breath, and not sensible seeing, & conceit thereof in the Schollers reason. For it is not in the willer, nor in the runner, but in nature, that giueth the gift, with the measure thereof, and perfecteth the same by her owne science, & in her owne time. And it is our science to obserue, and know natures science, and to applie our selues vnto it: for as the Philosopher saith. Physic. 2. cap. 2 ἡ τεχνὴ μιμεῖται τὴν φύσιν art imitateth nature: therfore though phantastike people are most delighted, and in loue with their owne antikes, or groundles buildings: Yet this is the onely true ground, and science. And how far soeuer wee differ, and disagree from it, euen so much greater is our errour, seeing that Art is the Scholler of nature. Many for want of due consideration and knowledge hereof, do miserablie torment both their Schollers, and themselues, the one being the others Torturer, whereas it is a great delight to teach, and to learne, if so be that the Scholler be not of too froward, and peruerse will, the maister too impatient, and the ignorant parents too much meding.

For the clearer vnderstanding hereof, that thou maist imitate, and apply thy selfe to nature in thy practise of teaching, obserue first the science, and worke of nature in vegetables. The corne of wheat being sowne in the ground, nature, which is the inuisible substance, or seede, first worketh on the sperme or flooze thereof, receiuing so much perfection, and strength from the same, as fitteth it for the woombe of the earth. Then it fastneth the attractiue

mouth,

mouth, or roote in the earth, drawing nourishment there from, as the child doth from the bodie of the mother. Afterward it commeth to birth appearing out of the earth, a small spire hardly to be discerned from any other graine. which shortly groweth into a leafe, after which grow other leaues: then the blade which is strengthened, and defended with the leaues, after that the eare, &c. Here in, and in all other things obserue the imagination or science of this cunning artificer nature, how distinctly, and methodicallie she contriueth, and in time perfiteth the building vp of her selfe. The Carpenter, or Grauer by his science or imagination beginneth, and perfecteth his worke without himselfe, but nature with in her selfe: euen as if the science or imagination of the ingrauer should be operatiue within the tree, distinctly, and methodically framing, & fashioninge an Image of the purest, and best therof, but expelling the grosse, and vnpossible. as bowes, barke, knotts, &c.

And as the art of engraning is vniformally contayned in the minde of the Caruer, but when a peece of wood is offered to him to worke on; the vniformall, and inuisible vertues one after another orderly, and methodically shew themselues in the framing, fashioning, and growing of this rush open logge (which is the elemnut of the worke) into a pleasant image, &c. Euen so in the seede of all vegetables, or growing things, and of all sensibles, that is, of beasts, foules, fishes, &c. is vniformally contained the whole nature, properties, qualities, colours, fruits, actions, &c. of the plant. or beast whatsoeuer. Which after that it hath a wombe, or matrice beginneth to worke out of it a bodie vpon it selfe: The full growth, and perfection of which

workes,

workes, or edifice plainely sheweth to mans sences what nature, or science, lay hid in the seede invisible.

Now for to reflect this light of the macrocosme, or the great world, vpon the microcosme, or man, that the Scholer-Master may ground his teaching on nature especially the true foundation, following her euen in her steppes, without aberration, or extravagation, and not vpon bare imaginations, vncertaine conjectures, and imitation of others.

Sperma hominis most ignorantly called of some, excrementum Lumborum, being indeed, the verie prime, and quintessence of his elementarie bodie, is like the Chaos, or first matter, wherevpon the spirit of nature, or imagination being moued, is made liuing, containing in it invisible, and vniformalitie, the whole nature of man, his brutall wisdome, reason, phantasie, sence, conditions, complexion, qualities, actions, &c. I speake not of the immortall soule, but of her plasma, or vessell. Which vertues, powers, or faculties, one after another shew themselues distinctly, and methodically in time and season. First the vegetable vertue of the invisible seed, or spirit of imagination (euen as the wheat corne) worketh on the sperme, adapting (fouentè solummodò matrice) the first degree of the bodies formation therefrom. Then it draweth matter from the bodie of the mother (non solùm fouente, sed pascente matrice) whereon it worketh, and frameth the liuer, heart, braines, and other members, and is called Embryo. After that the vegetable vertue hath thus far distinctly, and methodically brought, and wrought the matter, then moreouer the sensible vertue, and first of feeling, sheweth it selfe. And now hath it made it selfe a fit tabernacle, or house

for the supercelestiall substance the soule, which comes not into it by propagation of generation, but by immediate creation, & infusion. And is now called νήπιος an Infant.

After this followeth motion. And having such strength and perfection, as the Matrice can affoorde it, it commeth to birth, that is, passeth out of the matrice of the little world, into the wombe of the great world, wherein it worketh, and whereout it draweth food vnto the perfection of it selfe, as it did in the first matrice. And being perfected in this great wombe, there being no other matrice to receiue it for further perfection, it beginneth to decline by little and little, then dyeth, and is dispersed into this great bodie, out of which it was taken at the first: The soule also returning to God that gaue it.

Now being come into the matrice of the great world, it receiueth further strength, and perfection from the common ayre, the mothers milke, &c. wherby the other sences are actually perfected. After this the common sence sheweth it selfe, which apprehendeth the species, or as I may say (the villons) of the outward sences, but at the first vniformallie. Then the imaginatiue vertue, or phantasie appeareth, which at the first receiueth those species, or shewes from the common sence, but as vniformall & indistinct glances. After it appeareth the memoratiue facultie, which at the first remembreth vniformally and indistinctly also: but afterward some one vehement phantasme, maketh distinct impression, &c.

And thus when all the organicall faculties haue obteined conuenient perfection, then the intellectiue vertue, or vnderstanding appeareth forth in operation,

tion, which is proper onely to the reasonable soule, that reflecteth it selfe, both vpon it selfe, and vpon all things. And this it doth orderly, and methodically. First by apprehension of simple notions, not as they are meere shewes in the phantasie, but as hauing an affection to argue, or to be argued. Secondly, then by composition, or ioyning together things agreeing, by affirmation: and separating & disioyning things disagreeing, by negation, called propositions affirmatiue and negatiue. Thirdly, after that, by syllogizing, or reasoning, viz. confirming, or refuting questions by this or that reason, or argument. Fourthly, by ordination, or methodicall disposition of things of the same kind declared, explicated, amplified, illustrated, and also confirmed &c. by arguments, and syllogisticall discourse, placing the most generall, & simplest in the first place, and so by orderly discent comming to the most speciall, and compound in the last place.

Now after that these faculties of the vnderstanding haue receiued thus much perfection, then the Κοιναὶ ἔννοιαι, that is, the common notions of the knowledge of God, and truth in the mind: and the Synteresis, the knowledge, and discretion of good from euill in the conscience, begin to appeare, and shew forth themselues. This is the order, and progresse of nature, or rather of diuine wisedome in nature. Wherein obserue, and see how precisely, and constantly the simple, and generall faculties being the meanest, doe first appeare: afterward the more speciall, and compound being more excellent, till the whole man be perfected and compleate, in the most speciall and most compound. And note that this order of nature cannot possibly be inuerted: that is to say, the sensitiue power cannot preuent the vege-

tature, and so of all the rest, no more than the Tree can grow downeward into the roote. Note also that the coaction, or violent compulsion of nature, I meane the hastning of her beyond her course, is the destruction of nature, at least the hindring of her worke.

Euen such like is the progresse of euery art, both in the teaching and learning, & therefore of Grammar also: For our owne experience may teach vs that a man cannot teach, or learne Syntaxis without the knowledg of Etymologie, no more than to read before he know his letters. But put the case that he could doe them, with what exceeding great difficultie should it be? (For at least wise he must haue the Clarum Lumen, or vnderstanding and knowledge of the first inuenters) and to learne both together for hast, were confused, and indiscreete teaching and learning, and therefore as good as no teaching or learning at all.

Also the violent coaction of the learner. I meane the hastning of him beyond the semblable maturity or ripenesse of his naturall parts, or faculties, is the destruction of his wit, & learning, at least wise the hinderance of both, according to the prouerbe, Festinans canis cæcos parit catulos; and the adoptiue childe eyther dyeth soone, or as we say, thriues not in his person, at last wise a long time. This conturbing and disturbing of the childes wittes, makes both him to hate learning, and the Maister to hate teaching, being both wearied, and ouermaughted (as wee say) about an easie peece of worke, and all by taking the wrong end first in hand, as they that would catch weete Eeles by their tales.

For the reformation of this Errour, the maister must

must know, that art is the reflexion of the reasonable soule vpon nature: both vpon all things, and vpon her selfe, which is proper onely to reasonable creatures: wherein as euery one excelleth, so much the more wise is he counted, & is so indeede but they that are altogeather defective herein, are commonly called Naturalls. Now this reflexion and the growth thereof is in all things answerable to nature it selfe, and the growth thereof, as before I haue plainely shewed. He therefore that taketh a child to teach, must know that he hath the matter Chaos (χάος) or seede, wherin the art, or arts, that he would teach, are vniformally, or potentially conteined. And although in regard of the act of teaching he may be called Pater (as Saint Paule calls himselfe in the worke of regeneration) yet in regard of the learner, that hauing the arts of his Master potentially in himselfe doth sucke, and extract matter of art from his Master, for the building vp, and perfecting of himselfe, he is also called mater, as the same Apostle termes himselfe.

Therefore the Master must first frame himselfe to be as the Sperme, exhibiting the first elements to the Schollars wit, which are the most simple, and generall in art, & answerable to the vegetatiue faculty in nature. After that must proceed further, & exhibet himselfe as the matrice of the microcosme that the Scholler not lingring longer, then need requireth on the elements (Nam non progredi est regredi) may proceede forward both in learning, & exercise, making obseruing alwayes how nature multiplieth her selfe by degrees, and not suddenly, or hastily. For this he must know by obseruation ꝑ as he is to ꝑ Scholer a matrice (as the sperme is to the seede, the earth to plants, the wombe to the infant, &

the great world to all things) so the Scholar must receiue nothing from him, but that wherof he hath a facultie, or abilitie in himselfe (& pro modulo facultatis) to be produced into act, and perfected by the Maisters teaching. For though the seed be sowne in the best ground that is, & in varitie of grounds for triall sake and haue all the cost that may be bestowed thereon, yet cannot this adde, or diminish any thing to the nature of the seede, (ex spinis non colliguntur vuæ) Therefore ought not nature to be compelled, nor strugled to much withall: seeing that teaching is nothing but plantatio, & rigatio, planting and watering, as Saint Paule saith in 1 Cor. 3. all things.

Whereupon let him know, that not euerie thing which he teacheth, though neuer so plaine, and profitable, doth better the Scholler much, but that which he is inclined vnto by his owne Genius, or spirit. For nature arrideth that, which is agreeable to her, and perfective of her, and though the thing be great and waighty in the accomplishment, and attainement thereof to others in regard of the means: yet is shee not discouraged, but comprehending in generall the way, and possibility thereof by small moments obtaineth the but, or marke of her inclination and desire. Herehpon arriseth that common speech prouerbially vsed, That which will be, will be, and who would euer haue thought it. On the other side nature is froward, and aduerse to that, which dissenteth from her, hauing no pleasure, nor delight therein, and therefore though the thing be easie, and means great to the view and iudgement of others, yet after much a doe, this is the conclusion, and fruite, opera, & impensa perijt. It was a thing that would not be.

Therefore

Therefore for most iust cause is the Maister compared to a matrice, seeing that the Scholler as, the seede, is the agent, and the maister the patient (In spirituall things it is quite contrarie for the gospell being effectuall by the spirit is the agent conuerting, and changing man into the nature of it selfe, who is therefore a meere patient, being a leeper in the purest spirits of his heart, and braine and therefore hath in him no power, or facultie at all to attract any spirituall thing, vnlesse to carnalize it, but his powers are infused from aboue, as the reasonable soule is, &c.) Whereupon it followeth by good consequence, that the Scholler must attaine to learning by his owne studie, industrie, diligence, and exercise, vsing his maister as a helpe, as a nourse, or matrice, as I said before. And againe the Maister is to exhibite himselfe to the Scholler as a well mannered tilled, and pure soile, that will bring forth flourishing and plentifull fruits by the strength thereof, although the seede be but meane, and such as will hardly grow at all in barren, leane, and mossy ground: knowing this that the fat pasture causeth the Ewes to twinne, Et ex fortibus crearifortes.

This that I haue sayd of the Schollers selfe-learning is to be well noted, for oft times the maister partly of conscience (but not too often) and partly to satisfie the earnest desires of the parents, is verie deligent in teaching, which maketh the scolar more negligent in learning, as the prouerbe is, a quick handed mistresse maketh a slow heeld seruant, and the wheat that is sowne in too fat, and rauhe ground often prooues naught in harnest time. Let not the Scolar therefore haue an idle, carlesse, and wandring imagination of the Masters

instructiõs, but let him so fasten on the same, & that in serious musing thereon, he may feele the truth & reason thereof in his owne vnderstanding, whereby it comes to be made his owne, and is not easily forgotten, nay it is neuer forgotten, if the Scholar really, not phantastically attracting the same doth ripely, not rawly digest it.

That this may be rightly done, two things in nature are to obserued. First we vnderstand, and remember by semblances, and places (Similitudines & locos). For let a man marke himselfe, when he heareth, or readeth something that he presently vnderstandeth, not: and againe, when hee vnderstandeth, but feareth to forget, he beginneth immediately to raise vp, and stirr the phantasmes of the imagination, and to call them out of the memorie, that lie hid, and treasured there; which appearing to his minde doe helpe his apprehension, giuing also directions and informations to the discourse of his reason. Hence it is, that they, wheih are of good memorie, and quick imagination are sharp, witty, and eloquent, and commonly, (though erroneously) accompted the best Scholars, at least wise haue the generall applause, for many be phantasticall, but few iudicious. And though their vnderstanding be but weake (speaking and doing excellently oft times that, which they ripely vnderstand not) yet he that is contrarily defective in imagination, and and memorie, but of deepe apprehension, receiueth great helpe, and furtherance by them: for without those lights of the phantasie, his apprehensions lie hid, and obscure to others, yea and to himselfe, into much that he stands neede of one to speake that which he thinks, and knowes, and to be as it were his interpreter. And to vtter this more plainely,

these two differing sorts of men habent rationem maris, & fœminæ. For the iudicious & apprehensiue is helped by the imaginatiue man, & therfore deligh teth in him: & the imaginatiue man is perfected by ꝑ iudgement of the other, & therfore reioyceth in him.

But to digresse no farther (for much may be spo ken hereof) children are very imaginatiue, and full of fancies. And as they are strong in imagination, so are they weake in vnderstanding, and discourse; therefore the maister must in as plaine sort as may be, manifest euery thing to their vnderstandinges, alwayes calling on them, & vrging them to marke well what he sayth to them, asking them, if they vnderstand him: For proofe whereof let him cause them to rehearse what he hath told them, without regarding his wordes so much as his meaning, which let them declare after their owne manner, as they would speake one to another (for if they study chiefly to rehearse his words, tis a token that their memory is better than their vnderstanding, & therefore they take the easiest way, viz. to repeat some of the words, but to let the meaning goe) this vrging of them to attention will cause them to bend, and reflect their imaginations vpon it, and to seeke out some semblance, or place to illustrate, and to giue them light for the ripe conceiuing ther of. For children are as vnwilling to buckle them selues to vnderstand things, as they that delighting to runne about on pleasure, loue not to be held to any worke, vnlesse it be a little for recreation, and when they are weary of other pleasures (as the most delicious things, with continuance are loath some) to make a pleasure of idle labour. And children desire eyther not to learne at all, or no more then may serue for a recreation, which is in effect

iust nothing at all.

Therefore the maister is to inculcate often into them, the necessitie, profite, vse, and end of learning, &c. as also of play, &c. so begetting in them a knowledge, and a conscience, selfe-restraints, and selfe-motiues, &c. For they know not to what end they were created, & borne into the world, to what end they are put to Schoole, &c. what the end, and vse of learning is, &c. If the Schoole maister shall not be mute, but euer filling their heads with these things, he shall find the schollers much more willing to learne, and to profite more than with all rigour and seueritie, wherein there is as much difference, as there is betweene him that liueth healthfully by the strength of nature, and him, that liues dyingly by the strength of Phisick. Further marke well what I say, of filling their heads alwayes with good fancies. It is a most speciall point, of most Schoole-maisters very little regarded. The Parrate is taught to speake by often hearing the same words: and by often whistling the same notes the Thrush is taught to sing. Euen so childrens minds runne most on that, which they daily heare, and see, and consequently their words, and actions. Also experience may teach vs, that when wee are furnished with weapons, our minds are also vpon euery small occasion offered, filled with bloudie phantasies, yea, the very sight thereof causeth such gleamces, will we, nill we, in our phantasies.

The second thing to be obserued in nature, that the Scholler may incorporate, and make that his owne, which he learneth, is this. All kindes of creatures haue their particular imaginations, and naturall sciences, according to their kinds, but the imaginations, or sciences of mankind are manifold

and

and innumerable. And the reason is, because that man seeth in himselfe, all the qualities, and properties of euery creature whatsoeuer: and is therefore the true Proteus, or Vertumnus, that can turne himselfe into any shape, and euery shape. And this is the cause why some Philosophers thought, that the first inuenters of Arts, learned their skill of Beasts, Fowles, and Fishes: as spinning of Spiders, physicke of the Swallow, Storke, Hart, Dogge, &c. musicke, and building, of Byrds, &c. And this is the cause why that the vulgar people, not knowing well what they say, compare one man to a Wolfe, another to a Fore, another to a Dog, another to a Serpent, &c. whereas these sortes of men, are not so comparatiuely, but really: as also we find the same in holy Scriptures. Now some men are wittie, and suttle, that is to say, can reflect their reason vpon themselues, and playing the Pantomimes, or Stage-players, cannot onely couer their owne shame (as all should doe) but make an outward shew to the world of the contrarie. Others againe are fooles, and cannot hide their brutall man. Others are shamelesse dogges, and will not, &c. But he that is illuminated from aboue, and withall hath a cleare naturall light, as Salomon, &c. can see in himselfe, and others, all manner of folly, and brutishnesse &c, which through the Spirit of mortification, lye dead, or curbed in him, &c.

Now to make application. Hereupon it chiefely commeth to passe, that childrens imaginations are variable, vnconstant, and rowlinge, to and fro inclining them to any brutishnes and follie, vpon euerie occasion, and alwayes full of trifling fancies, and sleeing glances. And as there is a measureable fitnes

stones in them for any thing; so will they also be good for nothing, without gods grace, Parents, and Maisters care, &c. and all little enough.

Therefore that learning may take roote, & impression in them, the Maister must with great discretion and policie drawe them from this barrety and mutabilitie, to a certaine uniformitie, and constancie; that that seed of learning, &c. that he sowes, and implants in them having once taken rooting may bee serued of the childes nature, viz, understanding, reason, imagination, memorie, being drawne from other obiects, and idle impressions, cutting of vaine superfluities (which all men naturally are subiect vnto) & preserving them from outward contagion of vaine, wilfull, & idle persons, by whose meanes the potentiall follyes, and vanities of the child are produced into act, and are very hardly curbed againe. For such persons are plantatores, and rigatores also, whose poisons and infections do sure ly take effect; seeing that we are naturally decline to vice and folly, but accline to vertue and true wisdome; being like round heauy stones that of themselues runne downe the hill, but with much a doe are rowled vp, as the stone of Sisiphus: and as the earth which is prone to weedes of it owne accord but with much toyle, and labour hardly bringeth forth good fruite, especially if weeds haue once gotten the vpper hand.

The maister therefore that would haue the child prosperously, and happily proceede in learning, and good manners must deuise, frame, and fill the the Scholars head with witty, and good imaginations, according to his age, and disposition, I meane with similitudes, comparisons, examples, &c. recreating them very often with delightfull ta-

bles

bles, and stories profitable both to learning, and manners. For children are phantasticall, and as they loue to heare such things, so shall they heare them in filthy matter, and manner, at one hand or other, therefore the Maister considering childrens dispositions must vse reuokements, and preuentions aboue all things most carefully. Reuokements that when the childe heareth, or seeth such naughtines, his Maisters words and premonitions may come into his minde to retract him. Preuention: By furnishing him, and fraughting him, with these Antidotes, wherby he is better armed & strengthned against outward assaults, then with all corrections, and threatnings. For if nature as we see, be strong of her selfe, shee will with small helpe of Phisike expell noysome corruptions, and speedily recouer herselfe. And as the ground that is well manred tilled, and sowne thicke with corne bringeth forth no weedes, for the corne doth ouergrow them, but being thin sowne it will gather weeds: euen so our nature is such like, as it will bring forth, the one, or the other: but weedes it will bring forth, vice, and foolishnes, most plentifully, if this order aforesayde be not taken.

But I now digresse into the reformation of manners which requires a larger discourse, than a by-digression. Therefore I will retyre and proceede forward from whence I began to digresse, whatsoeuer the maister teacheth, let the Scholar by perfect vnderstanding thereof make it his owne (though he remember not all that he learnes) and if it be too hard for him, why should he be taught that, wherof he is not at al, or not yet capable? what a foolly is it, and a destruction of nature? And what matrice can bring forth, wherein their is no seede:

seede: I meane no principles of that art in the Scholar, which the Maister teacheth?

Furthermore let the master marke well without partialitie, whether the Scholar be defective in vnderstanding, and capacitie, or he himselfe in teaching. I my selfe haue knowne some children orderly, and methodically taught much what according to this theorike with delightfull, and maruelous successe, yea almost incredible, which afterward by contrarie order haue beene blotted, and haue had as good will to their booke, as a beare to the stake. Againe I haue knowne them, that haue beene long confusedlie, and disorderly taught, (as they are in most common Schooles) that could neuer be brought from foolish gabling, to any vnderstanding at all, till they were brought backe to the beginning of the Accidence, and of purpose caused to forget, whatsoeuer they had learned before. For hauing once gotten an habite of parrating they will not bend their reason, and imagination (neither can they) to learne, and vnderstand distinctlie, sensiblie, and methodicallie.

It behooueth the maister therefore, not onely to teach truly (as all doe not) but also to be the maister of that which he teacheth, that is, throughly to vnderstand it, and to be able to make the Scholler apprehend it, not alwayes after one way, & forme, as it were, but sundrie wayes: and especially, as he shall see this, or that particular Scholler of capacitie and disposition to apprehend it. For as all haue not the selfe same wit numero (as the Logitians say) so they doe not alike apprehend and vnderstand the same thing, though their wittes be all good, if the thing haue any difficultie, or ambiguitie in it, that being ambiguous to one, which is not so

to

to another. For let a man tell but an ordinary tale, plaine enough, euen to common wits, yet euery one vnderstandes it not alike, therefore in telling it againe, one telles it one way, and an other another way, differing not onely in words, but also in matter, some telling it distinctly, and sensibly: Others confusedly, and vncertainely, coniecturing rather, than knowing what they heard. Furthermore, let sundry men looke all vpon one thing at once, the object of the eye, namely the colour is one & the same in euery eye: but the thing it selfe offers sundry conceits, and imaginations to euery one of them, therefore if any two of them agree in the same cõceit, they fall a laughing or smiling, which proceeds from an approouing of the consent.

This is a thing of speciall note in teaching: and it is indeed painefull, if so be that a man haue many Schollers, thus to apply himselfe to euery particular, which were indeed an excellent course. For when the maister speaks to all, he is most commonly heard of all, that is to say, of none in particular: vnlesse it be of some, that is as willing to learne, as he to teach. And this is the Preachers case. For all in the Church heare him, but few heare him, viz. with speciall attention, to make particular application: the rest supposing that he speakes not of, or to him, or him, &c. but all. And so this all, is a certaine Monogrammus, mathematicall, (as I may say) or imaginarie, and vniuersall man, and so no one of them is bettered by the Preacher, and therefore neyther the all. These haue the Spirite of slumber.

Againe if the maister speake to one of a fourme, the rest heare by halfes with idle eares, and wandring mindes, relying vpon him that is spoken to, that

that they may learne of him by rote, or prompting, which he receiued vnderstandingly from the Master. In which case one is made, as it were the heire, the rest as yonger brethren: and so it happens to them as to yonger brothers.

Few maisters wilbe at such paines as this, whereof I speake, vnlesse a good conscience rather mooue them thereunto, then either the reward, or kind consideration and thankes of the Parents: which for the most part are won with the goose, and lost with the feather: or being rusticall stand dodgeing, because they prize learning at no higher rate, than common market-stuffe. And who almost regardes it, but as it is a meanes, to bring bodily profite or pleasure, as the Epicures held, & practised? This is none of the least causes, why that schoolmaisters in some Gentlemens houses are reputed no more than ordinarie seruing-men & lesse. Yea they will say now a dayes, that they respect, and reuerence learning, but as for the learned hee may goe begge with Homer. Iudge from what spirit this proceedeth. Surely as it is an easie matter in these politike, and hartlesse dayes one to beguile another: so is it as easie for Sathan to deceiue all, as euer it was, seing that men can so cunningly and wittily (themselues not perceiuing their owne harts, and spirits) carnalize, and Epicurize both all humaine learning, and diuinitie. Et vt olim, sic et nunc spiritus volatiles vbique suos fatuos Exagitant.

Thus much (courteous Reader) of the true theorike and grounds of teachinge. Wherein many questions may be demaunded by the vnskilfull (for to satisfie euery man in euery thing requireth a large treatise) and many obiections may be made by

by the captious. As for the former that are desirous of helpe in this facultie, but receiue not much from these generall, and remote grounds. I entend to write a treatise at large, of the practise of teaching, from the very first entrance, till the perfiting of a Scholar for the vniuersitie, my reasons of euery particular being drawne, from this theorike, whereon I ground my practise.

As for the captious, I answer to them, that Sophisticall and phantasticall spirits, and such as are of contradictious dispositions, are no competent Iudges in those things that are grounded on nature, experience, and vse: neither are they much to be disputed withall, because their wisedome is onely in words, & therefore without good iudgement.

Read therefore, I pray thee, consider, practise, and then iudge, and I hope that thou and I shall agree in one. If any thing that I haue done mislike thee, condemne not the worke, but amend the fault, or say nothing: And when thou thinkest, that thou hast mended it, beware that thou be not disliked also of others. Such is the fortune of euery worke, when it is once exposed to the publike censure. Tot sensus, quot Capita. But if euery one would, or could follow nature their guide, (and not bare reading, and meere imagination) we should all agree in one: for truth is but one: but imaginations, and probabilities are infinite, and too much discoursing with the phantasie, is the mother of errour, which whiles that some inforce, and constraine, they runne into a Labyrinth, and may sooner breake their wits, then beat out the truth, where it is not.

A Deo, & naturâ, non ex phantasia, aut more.

Fare-well.

RAMMAR is the art to speak well. It hath 2. parts, Etymologie, and Syntaxis.

Etymologie, is the former part of grammar, that declareth the interpretation, or properties of wordes generally.

A word, is a signe, or note, whereby we declare the meaning of the minde in naming, or calling something.

In a word are to be considered the matter, and signification, which is the forme

The matter of a word is diuided into letters, and syllables.

A letter, is the first, and simplest matter of a word.

The affections of a letter, are Prosodie, and Orthographie.

Prosodie is the true pronunciation thereof, which is perceiued by the power.

Orthographie is the right writing thereof, which is perceiued by the forme.

## Of a Vowell.

A Letter is a vowell, or a Consonant.

A vowell is a letter, which may make a syllable or word of it selfe, and without which no syllable can be made: therefore it is called a Vowell.

It is pronounced eyther with the mouth open:

oſodie of a tter.

as, a, e, i, o, with the mouth ſhut: as, o, u, and the greeke vowell y. They are the fiue degrees from the wideſt opening, to the narroweſt ſhutting of the mouth in ſpeaking.

The affection proper to a vowell alone, is aſpiration, or breathing.

It is breathed ſharpely, or ſoftly.

The ſharpely breathed vowell is ſigned with this Character, or note before it (h). Therefore ſeeing it is ſet before no Conſonants we rightly pronounce Hi-ulcus, Hi-acchus, Hi-eronymus, Hi-eruſalem, &c.

In latine words, it is ſometimes ſet after c, as, charus, pulcher, &c.

In greeke words, after foure Conſonants: as, Rhodus, Thorus, Chorus, Phillis.

The word that is ſoftly breathed, wanteth this note: as amo, onus.

## Of a Conſonant.

A Conſonant is a letter, which maketh a ſound onely with a vowell.

It is ſingle, or double.

The ſingle Conſonant is a ſemi-vowell, or a mute.

A ſemi-vowell is a conſonant, that hath the halfe ſound of a Vowell.

It is liquid, or firme.

The liquid ſemi-vowell is pronounced with the lips more open, and as it were melteth in ſounding as, l, m, n, r s

The firme ſemi-vowell is pronounced with the lips more drawne together, and hath an vnchangeable ſound: as j iod, v. vau: f.

A mute is a Conſonant, which alone doth onely mutter,

mutter, as it were a certain endeuour to pronounce. It is open, or shut.

The open mute murmureth with the lips open: and that partly in the teeth: as, t, d, partly in the palate: as c, q, g. Note that k hath the same sound with c, and is vtterly vnusuall in latine words.

The shut mute muttereth in the inner cheekes, the lips being shut: as, p, b.

The double Consonant is made of two Consonants: as x, z. X, is made of cs, or gs, as in crux, & frux, which may be perceiued by the genetiue cases crucis, and frugis.

Z, is made of sd, or ſ in the middle of a word. Note that in what word soeuer y, or z, is found, the same is deriued from the greekes.

I, betweene two vowels is a double Consonant, as maja, Pompejus.

## Of Quantitie.

Moreouer, the common affection of their forme, or figure, is the quantitie thereof. In respect whereof, they are called Capitall, or great letters, and little, or small letters. They are in number 25.

The small let. a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, ſ, t, u, x, y, z, & iod, vau.

The great let. *A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, V, X, Y, Z.*

### Note.

Great letters are vsed, first in the beginning of Verses, periods, and proper names.

Secondly, being set alone, they signifie a forename (which we call our Christian name) and a surname, some title of office, or dignitie, something of speciall note: and also numbers.

## Names.

A. Aulus.
C. Caius.
Cn. Cneus. (for Cons.
Cos. Conſul, aphæreſis,
Coſſ. Conſules.
D. Decius.
Deus Opt. Max. optimus, maximus.
G. Gaius.
L. Lucius.
M. Marcus.
P. Publius.
Ms. manuſcriptus.
Hs. millies millia ſeſtertiorum.
P.R. Populus Romanus.
P.C. Patres conſcripti.
Q. Quintus, Quæſtor, Quirites.
Res Reſpub. reſpublica.
Sp. Spurius.
Sex. Sextus.
S.P.Q.R. Senatus, Populuſque Romanus.
T.C. Tua clementia.
Sc. Senatuſconſultum.
Q. B. F. ſ. quod bonum, fælix, fauſtumque ſit.

## Numbers.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I. | 1. | LX. | 60. |
| II. | 2. | LXX. | 70. |
| III. | 3. | LXXX. | 80. |
| IIII. | 4. | XC. | 90. |
| V. | 5. | C. | 100. |
| VI. | 6. | CC. | 200. |
| VII. | 7. | CCC. | 300. |
| VIII. | 8. | CCCC. | 400. |
| IX. | 9. | D. | 500. |
| X. | 10. | DC. | 600. |
| XI. | 11. | DCC. | 700. |
| XX. | 20. | DCCC. | 800. |
| XXX. | 30. | DCCCC. | 900. |
| XL. | 40. | M. | 1000. |
| L. | 50. | | |

Thus

Thus farre of the true pronunciation, and right writing of a letter.

## Of a Syllable.

A Syllable is a full, and perfect ſound in a word.

It is made of one letter, or more.

A Syllable of one letter is euery vowell, a, e, i, o, u, and y, monophthongues.

A Syllable of more letters, is made either of two vowels, or of a vowell, and conſonant mixt together.

The Syllable made of two vowels is called a diphthongue, i. the ſound of two vowels in one Syllable.

There be fiue diphthongues: æ, au, œ, ei, eu, as, ætas, audio, cœlum, hei, euge.

The Syllable mixt of a vowell and conſonant, may conteine diuerſe letters: as, ars, mars, ſtans ſcrobs, ſtirps.

## OF Compoſition.

The affections of a Syllable are compoſition, or ſpelling, and pronounciation.

Compoſition, is whereby they are rightly ſpelled, or ſet togeather. Firſt, thoſe Conſonants muſt be, ioyned togeather in the middle of a ſimple word, which ought to be ioyned in the beginning of a word.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bd | A-bdomen. | gm. | A-gmen | becauſe we ſay, | |
| ct | San-ctus. | gn. | I-gnis. | Bdelliũ Cteſiphõ | |
| pſ | Scri-pſi. | mn | O-mnis. | Pſittacus, Scamnum, Tlepolemus, gnarus, ſtrema, Xantippus. | |
| ſc | Pi-ſcis. | ſt. | Ve-ſter. | | |
| tm | Æ-tna. | pt. | Pro-pter | | |
| tl | A-tlas. | xi.& | Di-xi.&c | | |

Secondlie, if in a ſimple word of two Syllabels the

the former end in a consonant, the latter shall begin with a consonant: as, Gal-lus &c.

Thirly, if the latter shall begin with a vowell, the former shall end in a vowell: as, Deus, pius.

Fourthly, if a consonant be in the middle, it shall be referred to the Syllable following: as, pa-ter.

S, is not written after x, because it is included in x, as, excribo, ecscribo.

## Of Euphonie,

Prosodye of Syllables.

PRonunciation, is whereby Syllables are rightly pronounced.

It stands in Euphonie and Measure.

Euphonie is, whereby certaine prepositions in compound words, are smoothly, and distinctly pronounced, and written accordingly.

| Smoothly. | | Harshly. | Distinctly. | | Indistinctly. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Occurro. | | Obcuro. | Abstineo. | | Austineo. |
| Officio. | rather | Obficio | Obtineo. | not | Ottineo. |
| Aufero. | then. | Abfero. | Obrepo. | | Orrepo. |
| Affero. | | Adfero. | | | |
| Effero. | | Exfero. | | | |

And for distinct pronounciation sake, consonants are sometimes interrayed: as, redamo, redeo, ambigo, ambio: not reamo, reeo, &c.

Contrariwise, the preposition con, comming before a vowell looseth, n: as, coerceo, coinquino, cooperio.

## Of Time, or Quantitie.

MEasure is whereby syllables in their pronounciation are measured. It is Time, or Tone.

Time, is the holding out of a Syllable in the pronounciation thereof.

In regard of time, a Syllable is short, or long.

A short syllable consisteth of one time, & if need be, it is noted over the vowell thus, Dĕus, mĕus.

A short Syllable is.

I. one vowell before another in the same word: as deus, pius.

II. a, e, y, in the end of a word: as, musa, rete, moly.

III. Euery vowell before these letters, r, l, t, d, m, b, in the end of a word.

IIII. i, and u, before s, in the end of a word: as trist̆is, bonus.

A long Syllable consisteth of two times, and is thus marked, (-) mūsa.

A Syllable is long by nature, or by position.

The Syllable long by nature, is.

I. Euery Diphthongue, as, audio.

II. i, and u, in the end of a word: as veni, manu.

III Euery vowell before n, and c, in the end of a word: as titan, splen, Delphin, hac, illac, &c.

IIII. a, e, o, before s, in the end of a word: as, amas, doces, nepos.

A Syllable is long by position.

I. When a vowell commeth before two consonants in the same word.

II. When it commeth before a dooble consonant, as, pax, gaza, Maja.

III. When a vowell commeth before two consonants in diuerse words: as, Major Sum, quām cui possit fortūna nocere.

IIII. A short vowell before a mute, and a liquid following is in verse common: as, patris, volucris, cerebrū, Hibla. But if the vowell be long, it remaineth so: as, arātrū, Simulāchrū.

V. o, in the end of a word is comon: as, homo, amo: But in words of one Syllable it is long: as, ō, stō, flō.

## The Affections of Quantitie.

The

The Affections of Quantitie, are Systole, and diastole.

Systole, is when a long Syllable is made short in meeter: as, Verg. Conubio jungam stabili. &c.
Diastole, is when a short Syllable is made long: as verg, Excercet Diana choros, &c.

The quantitie of Syllables is full expressed in these rules following.

*De primis, & medijs, Syllabis.*

*Vocalis præiens aliam, breuis esto Latinis.*
*Tardant vocales alias,* [a] *alias breuiantque.*
*Produc* [b] *diphthongũ, quoque cũ positura.*
*Præ muta, & liquida breue si vocale sit anceps.*
*Et longa bis quintæ, quando immediate.*
*I præit, at breuis (vt fidei) si consona præsit.*
*Fio cum ductis tarda* [c] *r, e, m comitentur.*
*Ebeu produces, communis redditur o hæ.*
*Arbitrio breuis aut longus genetiuus in ius:*
*Alterius breuis est, sed produc semper alius.*
*Tardat vocales* [d] *s, consona se præiuntes.*
*Primæ mensuram* [e] *vox derivata sequatur.*
*Simplicis & legem verbi* [f] *composta sequuntur.*
*Sẽper corripies, ab, ad, in, re, per, ob super & sub*
*A tarda* [g] *e, de, di, præ, se, pro, Latiumque.*
*Est pro breue in fugio, cello, fanoque, nepoque.*
*Et fatcor fundus, pago, fectoque profari.*
*Iunge* [h] *propheta, propino, protervus, fic proficiscor*
*Incuro, fundo, pello, pulso, variatur.*

*Præteritum*

*Præteritum produc diſſyllabon, atque ſupinum.*
*Tolle bibit, ſcidit, atque fudit, tulit, ortaque doctio.*
*Sic datum, itum, ſtatũ, ſatũ, ratum, quitũ.*
*Adde ſitumque, citum, litumque, rutum, ſupina*
*Præterito gemino beruis eſt prima, atque ſecunda.*
*Fuſte cecidit eos dices tamen, atque pepẽdit.*
[k] *I, vel o compoſiti partem finire priorem*
*Si videas breuia, velut armiger, orthographoſque.*
*Nomen in obliquis quantum ſit, flectio monſtrat.*
*His Adiectiuis penultima ſit tibi longa,*
*Icus, et alis, jungas aris, & orus, & oſus,*
*Atus, & itus, & utus, & ivus, & anus, & enus,*
*Queis addas [l] inus, niſi ſignat [m] materiale.*
*A verbi produc creſcentis, ſed dare deme.*
[a] *E produc, niſi præ, rim, ram, ro, queis bẽris adde.*
*Eſt i breuis niſi ſit præſens [o] quartæ ſed et ĩui.*
*Sed tibi pluralis dat [p] venimus, ĩuimus atque.*
[q] *Sum, volo, dant imus ſubiunctio, rimus, & anceps.*
[r] *O ſemper produc [s] ſumus, & volumus breuiato.*

## De vltimis Syllabis. (*quintus.*

*Tarda a, Non quĩa, pută, ită.* [a] *Rectus, quartus, ă,* a.
*In gintā numerus longus, quandoque fit anceps.*
*B breue. C tarda. Nonlac. nec, Donec. At hic, ſac.*
*Neutrũ hoc non [b] ſexti: tibi ſint communia cuncta.* b.
*De breue, t, e. Non [c] me, te, ſe. Non [d] ꝯ: catera rapta.* c.
*Verborum juga, ſi jubeant, produce [e] ſecunda.* d. e.
*Nominibus (docte vt) produc aduerbia ducta.*
*Hæc tria, rite tamen, benè, cum male [f] corripiantur.*

[z] *Quintſextum*

[g] Quintsextum produc, hodieque, dieque, fideque.
I. I tarda, (quasi, nec nisi) ibi mihi, vbi, tibi et anceps.
Et [h] vocat et dat i, græca breue os sibi dans genetiuo.
l. Corripias l, sol. Non sāl, nil, longa & [i] Hebræa. (ās
[k] Est breuis on, breuis in, breuis an, si est rectus ā, non
Tarda n. Non forsan, tamen, attamen, an, subin, in, [l]
n. Quæ per īnis crescunt, genetiuo corripiuntur. (men.
O dubia: obliquis tarda: modò, quo modo nunquam.
o. [m] Vix citò, ego, ambo, duo. Crebrò, serò, sedulo, [n] neutra
r. R breue. Non far, nar, ver, fur, cur, [o] parq́, crater, lar,
Graja in ηρ [p] longa: Pater, & [q] mater breviato.
Græcum dos gignens as (pallas Pallados) esto.
As. Correptum. [r] Accusans crescens pluralis in asque.
Omnia in as sunto, si sint, producta, latina.
Es. Es tarda. Brevis est graviter crescens genetiuo.
Deme ariēs, abiēs, pariesque, Ceres, [s] pes, orta et,
Es cum compositis, prodĕs, potĕs, adde penĕsque.
[t] Græcorum neutra, [u] & pluralia in es breviato.
Is breue. Pluralis casus non corripe [x] curvos.
Is. Is quoque longabis, si gignens crescit acutè.
Eis. [y] Eis producatur dipthongus græca, latina.
Is, quis, [z] bis breve: Cætera sed monosyllaba produc.
Is. Tarda [a] verba is, quæ faciunt pluralia in ītis.
Os. Os tarda; Haud impos, [b] compos, græcū & per o parvū
Vs breve: non monosyllaba, nec si crescat [c] acutè.
Vs. Flectio contracta ūs dat, non [d] rectus, nec [e] vocativus.
Ous. Græcula in oūs finita sient producta, Melampūs.
V. V semper tarda. Tibi lectio cætera monstret.

Scholia.

## Scholia.

*a* Græci. *b* nisi sequente vocali. *c* vt fierem, fieri. *d* vt major, pejor. *e* At vōcis, lēgis, regis, sedes, jumentum, fomes, jucundus, junior, mobilis, humanus, vomer, pedor, a brevibus fiunt longæ. Contrà, dūcis, dicax, fides, ărena, ăristа, pōsui, gĕnui, fiăgor, frăgilis, nōto, as, disertus, sŏpor, a longis fiunt breves. *f* At innūba, pronūba, a nūbo. Dejĕro, pejĕro, a jūro. *g* Excipe dirimo, dīsertus. *h* nisi sequente vocali: vt, vada dehiscens, fudibusque præustis. *i* Græca per o parvum. *k* Quotidie, et quotidianus variant. Sed ibidem, tibīcen, fidicen, vbique, homicida, geometra, meridies, Theophilus, orthodoxus. Scilicet, siquidem, quantilibet, quantivis. *l* præter diutinus, crastinus, pristinus, perendinus, hornotinus, serotinus. *m* cedrīnus, fagīnus, Chrystallīnus, myrrhīnus, &c. *n* Excipitur tertia coniugatio, nisi in rēris, & rēre imperfecto passivo opt. *o* vt audīs, audītius, audītis. *p* Penultima pluralis semper corripitur in omnibus. *q* vt sīmus, velīmus. *r* O incremento verborum producitur, *s* verò corripitur. Penultima nominum in al, do, go, ela, ile, imen, trīmus producuntur, sed intrĭmus corripiuntur. Excipe anīmal, putĕal. Sic nomina in ītius corripiuntur. Item verba in ŭrio, præter prūrio, scaturio. Antepenult. nominum in ībilis longatur: vt, audibilis.

a. b. c. n.

e.

f.

g.

h.

i.

k.

l.

m.

n.

o.

p.

q.

r. s.

*a* Nominativus, acc. voc. in a: præter vocat. græcorum. *b* Nā hoc ablativi est longa. *c* nec vlla monosyllaba præter quĕ, nĕ, vĕ enclyticas. *d* Græca in e, vt, Anchisĕ, phœbĕ, Tempĕ. *e* vt docĕ, mouĕ, cavĕ. *f* Sic magĕ. *g* Ablat secundæ impariss. *h* vt Pallas, palladŏs, dĭ. Sic Phyllidĭ, &c. voc. Amarylli, Alexĭ, Daphnĭ, &c. *i* Vt Michael, Daniel, &c. *k* vt Ilion (per o paruum) pylion, Alexin, Itўn, Ægină, Æginăn,

a. b. c.

d.

e.

f. g. h.

i. k.

l. nàn, Ænæas, Ænæān, &c. *l* Et omnia, quæ per apocopen castrantur. *m* Item et homo, vix leguntur producta. *n* Sic mutuo, sunt communia. *o* sic composita compar, impar. &c. *p* vt aër, æther, soter, character. *q* apud latinos. *r* vt, Heroăs, phyllidăs, &c. *s* vt compes, præpes. *t* vt hippomanes. *u* vt Naidēs, Cyclopēs, &c. *x* Dativum, & Ablat. *y* Simoeis, omneis, parteis, &c. *z* Bīs tamen apud Ovid.

m. n. o. p. q. r. s. t. u. x. y. z.

a. b. c. d. e. *a* Audis, velis, dederis. *b* Sic ŏs ossis. *c* vt tellus, salus, &c. *d* *e* Singularis numeri.

## Of Tone.

Tone, is the tuninge, or accenting of a Syllable.

It is simple, or mixt.

The simple is either sharpe, or flat, called acute, and graue.

The sharpe is accented with a rising voyce, and it is thus noted (´)

The flat is accented with a falling voice, and is thus marked (`)

The mixt is accented with both voices. It is called of the Grammarians the circumflexe: But of the Musitians, a fall. It is thus marked (^)

## Of the sharpe Tone.

The sharpe tone accenteth words of one Syllable whether they be short, as. nél, tél, or long by position: as, párs, páx.

Secondly, in words of two Syllables, the former not being long by nature, is sharpened: as cítus, látus, sóiers, sátur,

Thirdly in words, of many Syllables, the last but one, if it be long is sharpened: as Libértas penátes, otherwise the last but two: as dóminus, póntifex, áffatim, muliéris, cáthédrá, mediocris.

Except

Except compounds of fácio: as, benefácis, malefácis, calefácit, frigefácit: And compounds of fís, and fit are sharpened in the last: as, benefit, satifít.

Note that doubtfull Syllables in verse doe follow the Law of the verse: as, pictæque volúcres.

## Of the flat Tone.

The flatt accent is neuer expressed but in the last Syllable, to distinguish words: as, tristè, cùm. It is called the Syllabicall accent, because it is vnderstood in euery Syllable that is not sharpened, or circumflect, and they are pronounced with the same tenour of the voyce, as, Gratiànopolitanôrum.

## Of the Circumflexe.

WOrds of one Syllable being long by nature are circumflect: as, spês, flôs, rûs, mûs.

Secondly in words of two, or of many Syllables the last but one is circumflect if it be long by nature, and the later short: as, Lûna, mûsa, mâter, Rôma, amauêre, scripsêre: other wise it is sharpened as, népos, amauérunt, Scripsérunt: for one long Syllable before another, is neuer circumflect.

## Note.

NO Syllable is circumflect, sauing the last but one.

None but some one of the three last Syllables in a word is accented.

## Of the Affections of Tone.

THe affection of tone, is the changing, and remoouing of it, from the proper Syllable to another, and that by seauen meanes.

1. By distinction, the last Syllables of explanatiues are accented with the sharpe tone, thereby to distinguish them from significatiues: as, vná, eó, quó, continuó, nequá, siquá, ferè, planè, putá, poné, circúm, aliás, ergó, a coniunction, but ergô, for cansa is circumflect, as, Virg. Illius ergô, venimus, and many others, which in the end of a sentence are sharpened, but in the consequence, or contexte of a speach are flatt.

2. By Compositiõn, the accent is changed, that the compositiõn may be discerned, thereby. as, Dèinde próinde, aliquando, húcvsque, àlonge, dêineps, quàpropter, ádmodum, intereáloci, háctenus, &c. otherwise the accent is not changed: as dénique, vtique, itaque, vádique, híccine, &c. But vbique, & ubiuis are excepted.

3. By Transpositiõn, prepositions being set after their casuall words are flatt: as, transtra pèr, te penès.

4. By Attraction, the coniunctions que, ne, ve, dum tis, nam, and the prepositiõn cum, draw the accent to the Syllable next before them, and sharpen it: as Luminàque, hominésue, adèsdum, mécum.

5. By interrogation, the accent is remooued to the last Syllable: as, Egoné? Quis furor ô cívés?

6. By Aphæresis, the accent is changed: for such words retain the accent of the whole word: as, Vergíli valéri, Ingeni, Mercúri, for Vergílij, &c. or circumflect the last Syllable being contracted: as Arpinâs, Rauennâs, nostrâs, vestrâs, cuiâs, of Arpinâtis &c their proper Nominatiues. Donec, of donecum hûc, illûc, istûc, &c for hucce, illucce, &c. And compounds of dîc, duc, & fac, as benedîc, reddûc, calefâc.

7. By Idióma, when words of other tongues: do retaine

reteine their owne accents being vsed in the Latine tongue: as Simóeis, Periphas, georgicà, bucolicà, comædia, tragedia, Symphonia: which being made Latine words, do receiue the Latine accent: as, Simois, périphas, geórgica, bucólica, tragaédia, Symphónia, &c. And it is the best in borrowed words to vse the Latine accent.

The matter of a word is interpreted: signification followeth.

## Of a Noune Substantiue.

A Word in regard of signification, is signifitiue, or Explanatiue.

The signifitiue word serueth principally to signifie.

It is either a Noune, or a Verbe.

The Noune is Reall, or Personall.

Noune, is the name of a thing, that may be seene, felt, heard, or vnderstood: as, manus, a hand, domus, a house, bonitas, goodnes.

Of Nounes, some be Substantiues, some be Adiectiues.

A Noune Substantiue, is that which may stand alone in reason, or signification, without another word ioyned to it. And it is so called, because it standeth by it selfe, and Substeineth other words, which cannot stand without it: as, Liber, a booke. Liber magnus, a great booke, Liber legitur, a booke is read.

Of Substantiues, some are Abstracte, some are Participles.

The Abstracte Substantiue is proper, or common.

A Substantiue proper, is a name proper to the thing, which it signifieth: as, Petrus, Iohannes, Rhadulphus, Egidius.

The Substantiue common, (which is also called appellatiue) is a name common to many things: as, homo, lapis, iustitia pietas.

## Of the Accidents of a Noune Substantiue.

SIxe Accidents, or properties befall a Substantiue, viz. Notation Nomber, case, declension, gender, comparison.

In regard of these properties, a Noune is Homoclyte, or Heteroclyte.

Homoclyte, is when they doe euenly, or regularly agree to their Noune.

## Of Kinde.

Notation. is kinde, or figure.

Kinde sheweth the originall, or nature of a word. It is Primitiue, or deriuatiue.

Primitiue hath the originall, or beginning of it selfe, as, picus, grex, turba, sibilus, tintinnabulū, clangor, &c.

Deriuatiue is made of the Primitiue. It is Nominall, or Verball.

The Nominall deriuatiue is made of a Noune: And it is Patrominicall, or Diminuitiue.

## Of the Patronymike.

THe Patronymike is deriued from the father, grandfather, or some other person of the familie, or stocke: as,

| | |
|---|---|
| Æacides, | The grand-child of Æacus, i. Achilles. |
| Pelides, | The son of Peleus, i. Achilles. |
| Atrides. | The son of Atreus, i. Agamemnon, or Menelaus, |

Latoides

*Etymologie.* Of Diminution.

Latoides, Sonne of Latona, i. Apollo.
Nerine, Daughter or Niece of Nereus.
Menelais, Wife of Menelaus, i. Hellen.

## Of Diminution.

A Diminutiue is that, which signifieth the Diminishing or lessening of the signification of the Primitiue: It is vsed for flatterie, mockage, or pitty vsually.

A Diminutiue is made of the

Nominatiue case by changing

- us, into
  - leus, as equus, equuleus, acus, aculeus. Servulus, graculus, of gracus, regulus of rex, adolescentulus, lunula, of luna, animula, aquula, sylvula, mensula, literula, furcula, capitulum of caput.
  - ulus, ula, ulum,
  - aster, Antoniaster, Surdaster, parasitaster, poëtaster, grammaticaster. but they are little in vse
- x, into
  - culus, cula, lum, Dicax, dicaculus, fax, faculafornacula, cerulcula, but senex, senecio.
- o, into
  - unculus, uncula, lum, Homunculus, (but fur furunculus) Latrunculus, carbunculus, tyrunculus, offensiuncula, ratiuncula, virgiuncula, but homulus, & ardea, ardelio.
- nus, a, um, er, ra, rum, lus, a, um, into
  - lus, la, lum,

Asinus, na: asellus, la: gemellus, a, um: Bouus bellus agnellus, pugnus, pugillus: vnus, vllus: vinum, villum: catella, columella, & columnella: signum, sigillum, scamnum scabellum: scutum, scutella, rana, ranunculus; anguis, anguilla: ager, agellus, cultellus, libellus, puellus, la: libra libella: vmbra, vmbella, sacrum, sacellum: lucrum, lucellum; flabellum, populus, popellus: catulus, catellus, paululus; pauxillus: codicillus, codiculus of codex: fabella, & fabellula, tabella, tantus, tantillus, velum, vexillum.

Adding to it { culus, la, lum, } Flos flosculus, mas masculus musculus, cerculum, rusculũ, munusculum, corpusculum, opusculum, lepusculus, fraterculus, paterculus, amatorculus, muliercula, matercula, sororcula.

Dat. by adding to { o { olus, la, lum, } Of filio filiolus, so Tulliolus, alveolus, capreolus of capro: filiola, Tulliola, negotiolum, palliolum.

i { culus, la, lum. } Igni, igniculus, dulci dulcicolus, api, apicula, navicula, cuticula, ceniculus, la: particula, fonticulus, monticulus, ponticulus, lenti lenticula.

A word in ũi looseth ũ: as artui, articulus: versui, versiculus: so curriculum, geniculum, corniculum, domus domuncula, and domicilium.

Of the Ablatiue case by adding to ẽ, cula: as Res, rẽcula: spes, specula, vulpes, vulpecula: nubes, nubecula: dies, diecula: but merces, mercedula. Many haue onely a shew of Deminutiues. as baculus, vitulus, vitula, tabula, fabula, rabula, monedula, catulus, cuniculus, periculum, &c.

## Of the verball.

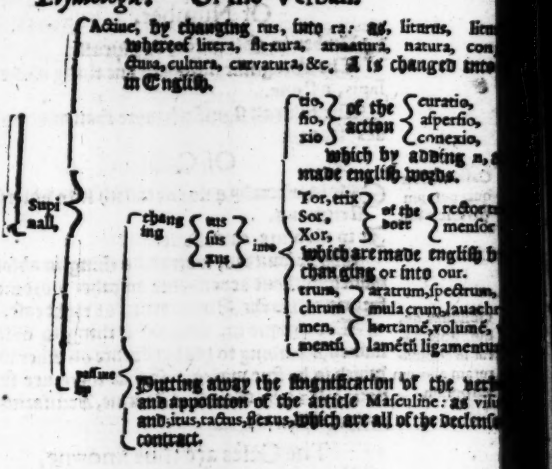
A Verbal is made of the Gerundiue by Changing, ans, and ens into antia, entia, and also entiũ: as témperantia, patientia, silentiũ, &c. where of the english words, temperance, patience, &c.

putting a way the verbs signifying, action & apposition of the articles.

- Masculine: as oriens, occidens, profluens, confluens.
- Fæmimine: as, consonans, continens, animans.
- Neuter: as, contingens, accidens, antecedeus, consequeus, and animans also.
- Common: as, appeteus, sitiens, diligens, indulgens s, is changed into t, English.

Supinall

Supinall,



- Actiue, by changing rus, into ra: as, liturus, litu[illegible] whereof litera, flexura, armatura, natura, con[illegible]ctura, cultura, curvatura, &c. A is changed into [illegible] in English.
- passiue by
  - changing
    - tus
    - sus
    - xus
    - into
      - tio, fio, xio } of the action { curatio, aspersio, conexio,
        which by adding n, [illegible] made english words.
      - Tor, trix, Sor, Xor, } of the doer { rector [illegible] mensor
        which are made english b[illegible] changing or into our.
      - trum, chrum, men, mentũ } aratrum, spectrum, mula crum, lauachr[illegible] hortamẽ, volumẽ, [illegible]lamẽtũ ligamentu[illegible]
  - Putting away the signification of the verb and apposition of the article Masculine: as visu[illegible] and, itus, tactus, flexus, which are all of the declense contract.

## Note.

Those Supinals of the first coniugation, that end in itus, or in ctus, doe forme their nounes in atio: as, vetitus, vetatio, præstatio, cubatio, domatio, sonatio, crepatio, juvatio, tonatio, fricatio, &c. but sectio is more in vse, than secatio. But domitor, adjutor, sector.

## Of Figure.

Figure sheweth, whether a Substantiue be simple, or compound. Simple: as, rector. Compound: as Corrector, fideiussio. To which may be added the decompound: as, inconstantia, irreverentia.

## Of Number.

NUmber is Singular, or plurall.

The Singular signifieth one thing alone: as, lapis, a stone.

The Plurall signifieth more than one: as, lapides, stones.

## Of Case.

Casus dicitur quia pereum vocarie cadit.

CAse is, whereby a noune falleth into diuerse constructions.

It is absoluts, or oblique.

The absolute is, whereby a thing is absolutely named, without dependence on other words: therefore tis called the Nominatiue, or right case.

Obliquus de, quia obliquatur in contexturam aliorum verborum.

The oblique is, whereby a thing is obliquely named, according to his depēdence on other words, which is by fiue wayes: so that there are fiue oblique cases: the Genetiue, Datiue, Accusatiue, Vocatiue, Ablatiue.

## The Cases are thus knowne.

The Nominatiue case commeth immediately before the Uerbe, and answereth to the question *Who*, or *What*: as, magister docet.

The Genetiue is gouerned, and signifieth of *Whom*, or what a thing is: as, Doctrina magistri. *Of* is his signe.

The Datiue case is gouerned, and signifieth to *Whom*, or to *What*, a thing is: as, Do librum magistro. *To* is his signe.

The Accusatiue followeth the Uerbe, whose action immediately passeth into it, and it signifieth *Whom*, or *What*: as, Amo magistrum.

The Vocatiue case is gouerned, and is knowne by calling, or speaking to: as, ô magister.

The Ablatiue case is gouerned, and signifieth from whom, or what a thing is. It is knowne either by prepositions seruing to it: as, De magistro, coram magistro: or by these signes, *In, With, Through For, From,* & also, by or than after the comparatiue degree.

## Of Declenson.

DEclenson, is the varying of a Noune according to case.

It is simple, or contract.

The simple is Parisyllable, or Imparisyllable.

The Parisyllable declenson is, whose Genetiue singular, for the most part, and Datiue plurall, is alwaies of euen syllables with the nominatiue singular: and it is double.

The first declinson parisyllables, when the Nominatiue, Vocatiue, and Ablatiue singular end in a, the genetiue, and datiue in æ diphthongue, the Accusatiue in am: the Nominatiue and Vocatiue plurall in æ diphthongue, the Genetiue in arum, the Datiue, and Ablatiue in is, the Accusatiue in as: as in example.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Singulariter. | *Nominativo,* | *musa* | Pluraliter. *Nominativo, musæ* |
| | *Genetivo,* | *musæ* | *Genetivo, musarum* |
| | *Dativo,* | *musæ* | *Dativo, musis* |
| | *Accusativo,* | *musam* | *Accusativo, musas* |
| | *Vocativo,* | *musa* | *Vocativo ô musæ* |
| | *Ablativo,* | *musa* | *Ablativo, musis* |

## Note.

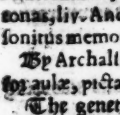
Note that filia, and Nata doe end in is, or in abus in the Datiue, and Ablatiue plurall: but dea, mu-

la, equa, liberta, anima, ambæ, duæ, doe end in a-bus onely.

By Hellenismus, the Genetive singular imitateth the Greekes: as, paterfamilias, materfamilias, filiusfamilias, vsuall. Dux ipse vias. En. filius Latonæ, liv. Andeon. Filij terras, Nev. nec auras, nec sonitus memor, verg. vnusuall.

By Archaismus, were vsed aulai, pictai, bellai, for aulæ, pictæ, belli, &c.

The genetive plurall is vsually contracted by Syncope: as, Grajugenûm, Ænæadûm, for Grajugenarum, Æneadarum.



The second declenson parisyllable is, when the Nominative, and Vocative singular end in er, ir, ur, us, um, the genetive in i, the dative and ablative in o, the Accusative in um: The nominative, and vocative plurall in i, the genetive in orum, the dative and ablative in is, the accusative in os: as in example:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Singularis. | Nominativo, magister. | Pluralis. | Nominas. magistri |
| | Genetivo, magistri. | | Gene. magistrorû |
| | Dativo, magistro. | | Dativo, magistris |
| | Accusativo, magistrum. | | Accus. magistros |
| | Vocativo, ô magister. | | Vocat. ô magistri |
| | Ablativo, magistro. | | Ablat. magistris |

## Note.

When the nominative endeth in us, the vocative endeth in e: as, Dominus domine. Except deus, ô deus: and filius, fili, meus, mi, genius, geni. Also agnus, lucus, vulgus, populus, chorus, fluvius, end in e, or us: as agne, and agnus, &c.

Also all Noumes of what declenson soever, being neuters,

neuters, haue the Nominatiue, Accusatiue, and Vocatiue like in both numbers, and in the plurall they end all in a: as in example.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Singularis. | Nomin. | regnum | Pluraliter. | Nominatiuo. | regna |
| | Genis. | regni | | Genetiuo | regnorum |
| | Datiuo | regno | | Datiuo | regnis |
| | Accus. | regnum | | Accus. | regna |
| | Voc. | ô regnum | | Vocatiuo | regna |
| | Abl. ab hoc regno | | | Ablat. | regnis. |

Except Ambo and Duo, which make the Neuter gender in o, and are thus declined

Pluraliter.
*Nominatiuo Ambo, amba, ambo*
*Genitiuo Amborum, ambarum, amborum*
*Datiuo Ambobus, ambabus, ambobus*
*Accusatiuo Ambos, ambas, ambo*
*Vocatiuo Ambo, ambæ, ambo*
*Abl. Ambobus, ambabus, ambobus.* Likewise duo, duæ, duo.

The Genetiue plurall is often contracted by Syncope: as, deûm, for deôrum, virûm, for virôrum.

Some Nounes of this declension do increase with his compounds, Duûmvir, triumvir, decemvir, centumvir, levir, for, socer, gener, adulter, puer, presbyter, iber, & iberus And adiectiues, asper exter, liber, miser, tener, dexter, gibber, prosper, & prosperus. Cæterus, & puerus haue bene in vse. To these adde the compounds of gero, & fero, as, armiger, signifer, &c.

The Declension Imparisyllable, is, whose Genetiue singular for the most part and Datiue plural is alwayes of mouen Syllables, with the Nominatiue singular: And it is double.

The

The first declenſon Imparisyllable, is when the Nominatiue, and Vocatiue ſing. do end in c, d, e, o, l, n, r, s, t, x, the Genetiue in is, the Datiue in i, the Accuſatiue in em. and ſometime in im, the Ablatiue in e, or in i, or in both: the Nominatiue, Accuſatiue, and Vocatiue plurall in es, the Genetiue in um, and ſometime in ium, the Datiue, and Ablatiue in bus: as, in example.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Singulariter. | *Nominat.* | *lapis* | Pluraliter. | *Nomin.* | *lapides* |
| | *Genit.* | *lapidis* | | *Gen.* | *lapidum* |
| | *Datiuus* | *lapidi* | | *Dati.* | *lapidibus* |
| | *Accuſ.* | *lapidem* | | *Accuſ.* | *lapides* |
| | *Vocatiuo* & | *lapis* | | *Vocatiuo* & | *lapides* |
| | *Ablat.* | *lapide* | | *Ablat.* | *lapidibus* |

## Of the Genetiue caſe Singular.

1. Certaine greeke nounes are deriued hither, from the firſt declenſon parisyllable: as Æſchines, nis: Ariſtides, dis.

11. This Genetiue is ſometimes borrowed of the ſecond parisyllable: as, immitis Achilli, for Achillis. Duri miles vliſſi, for vliſſis.

## Of the Accuſatiue Caſe.

im. 1. Some Accuſatiues end onely in im: as, vim, ravim, tuſſim, ſtim, maguderim, amuſſim, cucumim, Elim. Names of Riuers, as Tybrim, Araxim: And many greeke words: as Syrtis, Myſis, Thais, Tyeris, Tyberis, daphnis, Paris, changed into in: as Syrtim, Myſin, &c.

im, and em. 11. Some end both in im, and em: as, buris, peſvis, clavis, ſecuris, puppis, torquis, turris, reſtis, febris

beris, nauis, bipenis, aqualis.

## Of the Ablatiue Case.

I. Nounes of the Masculine gender deriued of Adiectiues, do end in i: as annalis, affinis, aprilis, Sextilis, quintilis, sodalis, riualis, familiaris. But rudis the fœminine, rude. i.

II. Neuters in al, ar, e, most commonly end in i, as, vectigal, calcar, mare. Reti, of rete. But par with his compounds endeth in e, or i. And these end onely in e, far, hepar, iubar, nectar, gausape, præsepe; and proper names, Soráste, Prænestе, Reate.

III. The names of moneths in er, end in i onely: as, September, Septembri. But the simple, imber, endeth in e, and i.

IIII. When the Accusatiue endeth in im, or in, the Ablatiue endeth in i: as, sitim, siti, Mysin, si. Tigrin, gri. But Ararim, Arare.

Adiectiues in is, or in er, that make their neuter in e, doe end in i: as, fortis, mollis, dulcis, acer, cri, But Poëts sometimes vse e, for i: Other Adiectiues end in e, and i, namely, of three genders vnder one termination: as, amans, clemens, fælix, veras, capax, &c. except pauper, vber, hospes, hospes. e, i.

V. When the Accusatiue endeth in im, and em, the ablatiue endeth in e, and i: as, puppis, pe, and pi.

VI. All verbals in trix, end in e, and i. So certaine Substantiues, ignis, amnis, anguis, supellex, vnguis, vectis, avis, ovis, classis, fustis, finis, and sometime civis.

VII. Likewise all Comparatiues: as, doctior, doctius, ore vel ori. To which adde, nostrás, vestrás, cujás

cujâs, and gentiles, Arpinâs, Fulginâs, &c. which are contracts of noſtrâtis, veſtrâtis, &c. now not uſed.

VIII. Proper names like to Poetticus, end in e: as, Lateranenſis, Iuvenalis, Martialis, Fælix, Clemens, &c.

## Of the Nominatiue plurall.

I. In the nominatiue plurall, we ſay Sardis, Tralli, not Sardes, Tralles.

II. Neuters ending in e, in the Ablatiue caſe, doe forme the nominatiue plurall in a: as, Corpore, corpora.

III. When the ablatiue ſingular endeth in i onely, or in e and i, the nominatiue plurall in the neuter endeth in ja: as, Concordi, fælici, molli, dulci, concordia fælicia, &c. Except vbera, and all comparatiues: as, doctiora, molliora, &c. But plura, and pluria, Apluſtra, and apluſtria.

## Of the Genetiue.

I. When the Ablatiue endeth in i onely, or in e, & i, the genetiue plurall endeth in ium: as puppi, triſti, ium. Except Comparatiues, and theſe following: as ſupplicum, complicum, artificum, ſtrigilum vigilum, veterum, memorum, pugilum, inopum: but plus, plurium.

II. When the ablatiue ſing. endeth in e, regularly the genetiue plurall is euermore contracted: as, honore, honôrum, milite, tum, doctiorum. And diuerſe others, eſpeciall verbalis in ans, or ens, as, Sapientûm, ſerpentûm, prudentûm, parentûm, &c.

III. When the Nominatiue ſingular endeth in two conſonants, the genetiue purall endeth in iûm: as,

as, pars, vrbs, falx, glans, trabs, merx, partium, vrbium, &c. except, hiemum, principum, participum, municipum, forcipum, inopum, cælibum, clientum, As, assium, mas marium, vas, vadium, nox, noctium nix nivium, os ossium, mus murium, faux, faucium caro carnium, cor cordium, alituum of ales, bos bouum, in the dative bobus, or bubus.

IIII. When the genetiue singular is of euen syllables with the Nominatiue, the genetiue plurall endeth in iūm: as, collis, mensis, accris, collium, &c. to these are added, litium, ditium, vitium, salium, manium, penatium: But canum, panum, vatum, juvenum, opum, apum, are excepted.

V. The names of feasts being onely plurals, doe make their genetiue most commonly in ôrum, which is borrowed from the second parisyllable: as Agonolia, vinalia, ôrum sometimes in iūm: as floralia, feralia, iūm: sometime in both: as parentalia, Saturnalia, ôrum, vel, iūm.

## Of the Accusatiue.

When the genetiue plurall endeth in iūm, the accusatiue endeth in es, or eis the digthongue: as partium, partes, or parteis, omnium, omnes, or omneis.

## Rules, whereby to decline all words of this declension, and to know the gender.

The genetiue case, increasing, or not increasing, and consequently all cases, are knowne by the terminations, of the Nominatiue.

There be seuentie terminations of the Nominatiue, as, hereafter followeth.

Seauentie

## Seauentie Terminations.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A. ac. | E. | I. | O. | V. | Y. |
| Al. | Ec. | Id. | Ol. | Vd. | Yn. |
| An. | El. | Il. | On. | Vl. | Ys. |
| Ar. | En. | In. | Or. | Vr. | Yr. |
| As. | Er. | Ir. | Os. | Vs. | Ybs. |
| Ax. | Es. | Is. | Ox. | Vt. | Yns. |
| Abs. | Ex. | Ix. | Obs. | Vx. | Yps. |
| Æs. | Ebſ. | Ibs. | Oïs. | Vls. | |
| Æx. | Ems | I.O. | Ons. | Vns. | |
| Ans. | Ens. | Ips. | Ops. | Vnx. | |
| Aps. | Eps. | Inx. | Ors. | | |
| Ars. | Ers. | | | | |
| Alx. | Frx. | | | | |
| Anx. | Eus. | | | | |
| Arx. | | | | | |
| Aus. | | | | | |
| Aux. | | | | | |

## A of two letters.

A. ăctis. Thema, poëma, problema, ſo Zeugma, a citie. &c are all greeke neuters and make the dat. and abl. in is, or in ibus Lac Lactis neut.

Ac.

Al. ălis. Minŭtal, anĭmal, vectigal, cervical, tribŭnall, capĭtal, putĭal, which ſeeme to be contracted of neuters in le, and do end therefore in li, in the ablatiue, ſo lſpal, a citie.

ălis. Hannibball, Aſdrubal, &c. maſ. ſo ſal, if it be declined in both nombers: but if it lack the plurall, tis a neuter.

An

An. {ānis {Titan, Acharnan, Pæan. masc.

Ar. {āris. {Pulvinar, laquear, lucar, calcar, exemplar, &c. contracts, which therfore make i, in the abl. far: and nar, is also sometime a nuter, car, masc.

Ar. {āris. {Hamilcar, cæsar, lar, but lăr, lartis, a mans name. Par, with his compounds, compar, impar, separ, dispar nectar, neut. bacchar, fœm.

Ar. {ătis. {Hepar, Hepătis neut.

As. {ātis. {Probitas, charitas, facultas, &c. fœm. all. Magnas, masc. and primas.

As. {āsis. {Vas, vāsis, neut.

As. {āris. {Mas, măris, masc.

As. {ătis. {anas, anătis, com.

As. {ădis. {Lampas, monas, trias, decas, doras, dipsas, Pallas, chilias hebdomas ennoas, greeke fœm. Ætias, Phaëtontias, Archas, com. Vas vădis, as asses, masc.

As. {antis. {Adamas, elephas, gigas, Acragas, garamas, Chalcas, masc. Pallas, some of Evander.

Ax. {ācis. {Pax, fornax, fem. thorax, phœnax, thrax, anthrax, masc. and all adiectives in ax: as, audax, bibax, ācis.

Ax. {ăcis. {Greeke appellatives, and Gentiles, storax, dropax, Atax, Arabrax, Pharnax, Briax, Syphax, which onely maketh ācis, and ăcin, masc. abax, similax, panax, colax, and limax. com. Caudax, fax, fœm.

Ax. {ăbis {Astinax, Hylax.

A,

## A, of three letters.

Abs. {ăbis. {Arabs, Arăbis, masc. trabs, trăbis, fœm.
Æs. {æris. {Æs, æris, neut. But præs, prædis, masc.
Æx. {ĕcis. {Fæx, fecis, fem.
Ans. {antis. {Infans, com. Sextans, dodrans, quadrans, masc. and all participles in ans.
andis {glans, glandis, fem.
Aps. {ăpis. {Lælaps, daps, dapis, fem. but daps is vnusuall.
Ars. {arris. {Mars, masc. pars, ars, fem whose compounds change a into e, expers iners.
Alx. {alcis. {Falx, fem. Calx, a heele, Com. Calx, a limechalke, masc.
Anx. {angis. {Phalanx, phalangis, fœm.
ancis. {Lanx, lancis, fem.
Aus. {dis. {Fraus, laus, dis, fem.
Arx. {cis. {arx, arcis, fem.
Aux. {cis. {Faux, cis, fem. But the Nomina. is vnusuall.

E

No words ending in e, doe increase, and they are all neuters.

## E, of two letters.

Ec. {ĕcis. {Halec, fem. perfect in both numbers. But the neuter lacking plurall.
El. {ĕlis. {All Hebrew words, Raphaël, Michaël, Daniel. But mel, mellis, fel, fellis, neuter wanting plurall, but mel hath the three like cases.

En.

En. — īnis. — pecten, mas. oscen, com. tibicen, Cormēen, liticen, lyricen, tubicen of Cano, mas. and Flamen, a heathenish priest: also certamen, crimē, culmen, inguen, and about 70, more neut.

En. — ōnis. — lien, Attagen, splen, ren, lichen, mas. syren, fem.

Er. — ĕris. — Anser, passer, præster, acipenser, epic. Later, vomer, mas. pauper, puber, degener, vber, adject. aër, æther, mas. mulier, fem. filer, suber, cicer, ficer, laser, piper, tuber, a toad-stoole, and fruit of a tree, spinter, acer, verber, cadaver, papaver, iter, tineris, vber, gingiber. But vēr, vēris, Iupiter, Iŏvis.

Er. — ēris. — Greeke wordes in ηρ, make ēris, Sotēr, charactēr, crater, panther, Stater, &c. Ser. mas.

Er. — tris. — Pater, venter, frater, accipiter, mas. campester, pedester, equester, palustер, sylvester, adject. linter. com. mater, fem. So, volucer, cris, cre: celeber, bris, bre: alacer, cris, cre, adject. do not increase. Imber, bris.

ĕtis. — Seges, teges, ăbies, fem. interpres, indiges, com. hebes, teres, perpes, præpes, adject. paries, aries, mas.

ĕtis. — quies, requies, inquies, fem. magnes, tapes, lebes, cres, cures, mas. and proper names, Mendes, Thales, Dares, Chremes, mis, and mētis, cæres, rētis, & rītis, com. locuples, adject. But ceres, rĕris, fem. and bes, bessis, mas.

ĕdis. — merces, fem. hæres, com. pes, pedis, mas. Compes, ĕdis. fem.

Es. ēis. Ames, ſlipes, limes, fomes, termes, nubes, tramex, ceſpes, gurges, palmes, poples, mille ales, antiſtes, eques, veles, ſatelles, miles, comes, pedes, hoſpes, & hoſpita, com. Dives, ſoſpes, com. and ſoſpita.

ĭdis. Obſes, præſes, com. deſes, reſes, Voted of ſedeo.

is. Nubes, ædes, clades, labes, contages, cudes, fames, indoles, lues, cautes, moles, ſepes, rupes, ſedes, ſoboles, ſordes, ſtrues, tabes, pubes, apes, vepres, adipes, fides, fem. vates, com. greeke words in ēs are neut. verres, maſ. do not increaſe.

Ex. ĕcis. Apex, ramex, latex, vertex, and vortex, caudex, & codex, pollex, podex, maſ. forfex, carex, fem. vibex, ĭcis, fem. obex, imbrex, ſilex, cortex, culex, pumex, iudex, vindex, opifex, artifex, aruſpex, illex, index, com. pellex, Ilex, fem. ſupplex, Voted. But ſupellex, ſupellectilis. fem.

ēcis. Reſex, mirmex, vervex, maſ. nex, nĕcis, prex, fem. vnuſuall. But lex lēgis, with his compounds, aquilex, exlex, illex, lelex, com. rex rēgis, and grex grĕgis. maſ.

ĭgis. Remex, remĭgis, maſ. But ſenex, ſenis, com.

## E, of three letters.

Ebs. ĕbis. Plebs, plēbis, fem. but exlebs, ĭbis, com.

Ems. mis. hyems, hiĕmis, fem.

Ens.

Ens. { entis. { Dens, bidens, triens, torrens, *maſ.* lens, mens, gens, *fem.* Bibens, ſerpens rudens, cliens, parens, adoleſcens, *com.* amens, demens, *adiect.* and all participles of their verbals in ens.
endis. { Libripens, *maſ.* nefrens, *com.* lens, *fem.*
untis. { iens, euntis, with the compounds, abiens, iniens, abiens, rediens, periens, euntis. But ambiens, ientis.

Eps. { ipis. { adeps, princeps, forceps, *com.* But anceps, cupis, and ſeps ſepis, a ſerpent, municeps, particeps, anceps, biceps, præceps, ius, contracts of ancipes, bicipes &c.
itis.

Irs. { ertis. { Expers, iners, of ars, adject.

Irx. { cis. { Merx, cis fem.

## I

No Latine words in the nominatiue ſingular, end in j.

### I of two letters.

Id. { Idis { Dauid, idis.

Il. { ilis. { pugil, vilil, *com.* mugil epic. fil, *neut.* pervigil, adject.

In. { Inis { Delphin, *maſ.* and delphis, ſalamin, *fem* and ſalamis, and ſalamina.

Ir. { Iri. { Vir, with his compounds, levir, duumvir triumvir &c.

itis. { Samnis, dis, Quiris, *maſ.* lis *fem.* charis charitis ſhort *fem.*

Lapis, *maſ.* caſſis, cuſpis, Iaſpis ægis, aſpis, aclis, ibis tyrannis, cenchris,

Is. { ĭdis. { pyramis, pixis, Iſis, perſis, iris, bolis
corōnis, fem. and olyris, maſ. So
greeke patronymikes, Æneis, dos or
dis, and many in is, making dos ſhort.
But crenis, crenīdis, Neſis, pſophis.
ĕris. { puluis, vomis, cinis, maſ.
ĭnis. { Sanguis, pollis, maſ. in old time San-
guen, pollen, neut. were vſed. Trachis
Trachīnis, long.
īris. { Glis, glíris, maſ.

Is. { is. { Anuſſis, auris, avis, baſis, bipennis,
birēmis, callis, chelis, clauis claſſis,
cutis, faucis, febris, melis, meſſis, na-
ris, paralyſis, ovis, peſſis, peſtis poëſis,
proneptis, ratis, ſecuris, ſementis, tuſ-
ſis, bilis, ſitis, vis, opis, vicis, ſtipis, ſco-
bis, ſtrigilis, Novalis, buris cannabis,
pelvis, ravis, navis, turris, puppis, fem.

Ix { ĭcis. { Ibix, calix, varix, maſ. ſilix, hiſtrix,
ſilix, fornix, ſalix, coxendix, pix,
chænix, fem. Cilix, of cilicia, com.
īcis. { Cornix, coturnix, piſtrix, radix, lodix,
cervix, matrix, nutrix, fem. phænix,
maſ. perdix, c om. ſpadix, fælix, pernix,
adiect. all verbalis in trix: as victrix,
&c. fem.
ăgis. { maſtyx, gis. maſ. and phryx, of phri-
gia.
ĭvis. { nix, nivis, fem.

## I of three letters.

Ibs. { ĭbis { Libs, libis, maſ.
Inx { ingis { Syrinx, Syringis, fem. and Syringa.

Irpe

Irps. irpis. ſtirps, com. a plant. But a ſtocke, or ſtulte, fem.

Io. ōnis. Legio, ditio not vſed in the nom. contagio, titio, maſ. Io, a proper name, &c. ſo ratio, natio, and all verball in tio, ſio, xio, fem.

ēnis. Anio Aniēnis a riuer. Nerio, wife of Mars.

## O.

### O of two letters

ōnis. Harpāgo, (in accuſ. plurall, harpagines) aquilo, vdo, ligo, cento, cudo, ſulmo, ſpado, ſenio, ternio, ſermo, maſ. So all nounes ſignifying a body, as ardelio, agaſo, carbo, captio, fronto, naſo, epulo, draco, mango congerro, fullo, helluo, labeo, latro, nebulo, præco, prædo, pugio, ſuſurro, ſapo, ſtruthio, ſalmo, pavo, capo, vmbo, temo, vnio, calcitro, verbero, apexabo, mucro, caupo, erro, pulmo, and very few more But vnēdo, titio, and Dido, calypſo, Iuno, &c. fem.

On. ŏnis. Certaine gentiles, Macedo. Brito, Saxo, vangio, lingo &c.

ĭnis. All in do, and go: as dulcedo, formido, libido, ſiligo, compago, ſattāgo, imago, lanugo, virgo, grando, fem ordo turbo, maſ. cardo margo, com. Apollo, maſ. homo, nemo, com. But caro, carnis, fem

Ol. ōlis. Sōl, ſōlis maſ. the onely word in Ol.

On.
- ōnis. Damon, ladon, Simon, trigon, triton, typhon, *maſ.* Babilon, Sidon, *fem.* Pithon, *com.* and all greeke nounes increaſing by ō, magnum
- ŏnis. Agamemnon, canon, dæmon, *maſ.* gorgon, amazon, ſyndon, *fem.* Orīon Ægeon, Edon, ōnis and ŏnis, Architecton, Palæmon, and all ſuch increaſing by ŏ parvum.
- ontis. Aaron, Phaëton chamæleon, *maſ.*

Or.
- ōris. Amor, timor, rumor, honor, vapor, clamor, labor, which haue alſo, hones, vapos, clamos, labos, ſopor, plur. car, maſ and about ſome 50. more, beſides verbalis, in tor, ſor, xor, and comparatus, all maſ. Diſcolor, verſicolor, adject. But vxor, ſoror *fem.* auror, *com.*
- ŏris. Caſtor, Hector, Rhētor, *maſ.* arbor, and arbos, *fem.* æquor, ador, marmor, *neut.* memor, bicorpor, indecor adiect.
- Cor, with the compounds excors, vecors, ſocors, concors, adiect.

Os.
- ōris. mos, moris, lepos, flos, ros, rorium, gen. plu. *maſ.* glos *fem,* os ōris *neut.* orium, gen. plu.
- oſſis. os, oſſis, *neut.* exos, exoſſis, adiect.
- ŏvis. bos, bovis, boum, gen. plu. *com.* bat. bobus, bubus.
- ōdis. Cuſtos, ōdis, *com.*
- ōtis. Nepos, *maſ.* cos, dos, *fem.* Sacerdos, *com.* But compos, impos, ōtis, adiect. eros, Rhinoceros, Ægoceros, *maſ.* monoceros, *fem.*

Ox.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | oïs. | Minos, heros, tros, mas. |
| Ox. | ōcis. | Volvox, mas. atrox, velox, ferox, adiect. |
| | ŏcis. | Cappadox, m. cœlox, fem. præcōxcis and cōquis, adiect. nox, noctis, fem. |
| | ŏgis. | Allobrox, polyphilox, mas. |

## O of three letters.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Obs | ōbis. | Scrobs, and scrobis, fem. but Scobs, bis, fem. |
| Oïs | oëntis. | Simoïs, Simoëntis, pyroïs, but dip loïs, idis, fem. |
| Ons. | ontis. | mons, fons, pons, mas. frons, bifrons, com. spontis, te, fem. sons, insons, adiect. |
| | ondis. | frons, frondis, fem. |
| Ops. | ōpis. | Cercops, cyclops, canops, hydrops, mas. |
| | ŏpis. | Æthiops, cecrops, Dolops, mas. ops, a goddesse, and ŏpis, helpe fem. inops, adiect. |
| Ors. | ortis. | Mors, sors, with his compounds, consors, exors, adiect. so cohors, and fors, te dipt, fem. |
| | ordis, | The compounds of cor, excors, vecros, socors, discors, concors. |

## V.

## V. of two letters.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Vd. | ŭdis. | Bogud, Bogŭdis. |
| Vl. | ŭlis. | præsul, consul, exul, com. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Vr. | ŭris. | Vultur, furfur, turtur, mas. murmur sulphur, guttur, neut. so Anxur, Tybur, cities but anxur, is also mas. Augur, lygur, com. But fur fūris, com. cicur, adiect. |
| | ŏris. | Ebur, or ebor robur, or robor, jecur, jecŏris jecinŏris, jocinor, also: femur, neut. |
| Vs. | ūdis. | Incus, subscus, pălus, ūdis, fem. but pecus, ŭdis, fem. |
| | ūris. | Rus, thrus, jus, crus, pus, nute mus, mas. tellus, fem. plus, adiect. but gus suis, grūs, gruis, ligus ūris, com. |
| | ūtis. | Virtus, Salus, seruitus, senectus, juventus &c. all fem. Intercus, inter cūtis, short adiect. |
| | ĕris. | Vellus, olus, onus, latus, funus, munus, genus, vlcus, viscus, opus, pondus, rudus, fidus, scelus, neut. Vetus, adiect. But Venus, venĕris, fem. a goddesse. |
| | untis. | Opus, opuntis, a citie, hydrus, trapezus, and cerasus, a citie. |
| | ŏris. | Litus, nemus, facinus, fæmus, tergus, tempus, decus, corpus, pecus, pectus, penus, frigus, pignus, neut. but lepus, mas. lepus, or lepos, eloquence, pŏris. |
| | ŏdis. | tripus, Oedipus, Oëdipodis, mas. |
| Vt. | ĭtis. | Capur, synciput, occiput, neut. |
| Vx. | ūcis. | nux, crux, lux, which want the plurall feminine. Pollux, mas. But dux, dūcis, com. trux, redux, ūcis, Adiect. |
| | ūgis. | Frux, fem. But coniux, or coniunx, iŭgis, com. |

V,

## V, of three letters.

Vls. {ŭltis. {puls, pulris, fem.
Vns. {ŭncis. {Aruns, Decuns.
Vnx. {vncis. {Septunx, fem. deunx, quincunx, mas.

## Y

## Y, of two letters.

Y. {ÿos. {moly, Epy fem.
Yn. {ÿnis. {porcyn, Gortyn, fem.
Ys. {ÿdis. {chlamys, chlamÿdis. fem.
Ys. {ÿos. {Phorcys ÿos.
Yx. {ÿcis: {Eryx, a hill, and a mans name. Sandyx, mas. Bebryx, a mans Countrie, icis, and Teis. but bombyx, ÿcis, mas. chalyx, a flint.
Yx. {ÿchis. {Onyx, and Sardonyx, onÿchis, com. cëryx, mas. and cëyx, some to Iupiter.
Yx. {ÿgis Oryx, mas. styx, fem.

## Y, of three letters.

Ybs. {ybis. {chalybes chalÿbis. m.
Yns. {ynthis. {Tyrins, Tyrinthis, a city, and a river.
Ynx {incis. {Linx, Lincis, com.
Yps. {yphis. {Gryps, gryphis, mas.

## The Second Imparisyllable.

The

THE second declenson Imparisyllable, is when the Nominatiue singular endeth in ies, the Genetiue and Datiue in iēi, the Accusatiue in iem, the Ablatiue in ie. The Nominatiue, Accusatiue, & Vocatiue plural in ïes, the Genetiue in iêrum, the Datiue, and Ablatiue in iēbus: as in example.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Singulariter. | Nom. | meridies | Pluraliter. | Nom. | meridies |
| | Gen. | a meridiēi | | Gen. | meridiêrū |
| | Dat. | meridiēi | | Dat. | meridiēbus |
| | Acc. | meridiem | | Acc. | meridies |
| | Voc. | ô meridies | | Voc. | ô meridies |
| | Ablat. | meridie | | Ab. | meridiēbus |

a vergsayth dij Salust, die by contraction.

Note that these foure, plebes, res, spes, fides, doe end ĕi short in the Genetiue and Datiue singular: as, plebĕi, rēi, spĕi, fidĕi.

Note also, that many ending in ïes, are made the first parisyllable, by changing the last syllable into a; as luxuries, luxuria, mollities, mollitia.

## Of the Declenson Contract.

THE declenson contract ariseth of the first imparisyllable, which increasing by, is pure, causeth the former syllable to be contracted with it into one. The nominatiue and vocatiue singular doth alwayes end in us, the genetiue in ūis, contracted into us; the Datiue in ūi without contraction. The accusatiue in ūem into um: the ablatiue in ūe, into u. The nominatiue, accusatiue, and vocatiue

vocatiue plurall ües into us, the genetiue uium into ium, the datiue and ablatiue in ubus into ibus, and ſometime into ubus: as, in example.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Singulariter. | Nominativo, | manus | Pluraliter. | Nominativo, | manus |
| | Genetivo, | manus | | Genetivo, | manuum |
| | Dativo, | manui | | Dativo, | manibus |
| | Accuſativo, | manum | | Accuſativo, | manus |
| | Vocativo, ô | manus | | Vocativo ô | manus |
| | Ablativo, | manu | | Ablativo, | manibus |

## Note.

Terence vſeth the genetiue without contraction: as, eius anuis cauſa, for anus.

The datiue is ſeldome contracted, to diſtinguiſh it from the Ablatiue, yet it is ſometimes contracted into u: as, verg.

Quod neque concubitu indulgent.

Ter. Veſtitu nimio indulges.

Terence borroweth the genetiue from the ſecond parſyllable: as, Nihil ornati, nihil tumulti.

The genetiue plurall contract, is further contracted ſometimes by Syncope: as, Currûm, for curruum.

The Datiue and Ablatiue, is contracted into ûbus, in theſe following: as, acus, lacus, artus, arcus, tribus, ficus, ſpecus, quercus, partus, veru, partus, which bathalſo portibus: but in all other into ibus: as fructibus, fructibus, &c.

The holy name Ieſus is thus declined after the Greekes as, Nom. Ieſus, Gen. Ieſu, Dat. Ieſu, Ac. Ieſum, Voc. Ieſu, Ab. Ieſu.

Here followeth a Table of the Declenſons.

## *SINGVLARITER.*

| | *Nom.* | *G.* | *D.* | *A.* | *V.* | *A.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Parisyl. | a. | æ. | æ. | am. | like the Nominative. | a. |
| 2. Parisyl. | er, ir, ur, um, us. | i. | o. | um. | e. | o. |
| 3. Imparisyl. | c, l, t, d, n, x, e, r, o, s, | is. | i. | em. im. | | e. i. e, i. |
| 4. Impari. Cont. | ies. | iēi. | iēi. | iem | | ie. |
| | us. | us. | ūi. | um. | | u. |

## *PLVRALITER.*

| *Nom.* | *G.* | *D.* | *A.* | *V.* | *A.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| æ. | ârum. | is. | as. | like the Nominative. | like the Dative. |
| i. | ôrum. | is. | os. | | |
| es. | um. ium. | ibus. | es. | | |
| ies. | iêrum. | iêbus. | ies. | | |
| us. | ūum. | bus. | us. | | |

# A Table of the declining of Greeke words.

| | N. | G. | D. | A. | V. | A. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Parif. | As. | æ. | æ. | an, am. | a. | a. | Ænæas. |
| | Es. | æ. | æ. | en, am. | es, e, a. | e, a | Anchiſes. |
| | E. | es. | e. | en. | e. | e, | Penelope. |
| 2. Parif. | Eus. | ei, eos. | ei. | ea, um. | eu. | eo. | Orpheus. |
| | Os. | i. | o. | on. | e. | o. | Delos, Logos. |
| | On. | i. | o. | on. | on. | o, | Ilion, Barbiton. |
| 1. Impa. | A. | tis. | ti. | a. | a. | te. | Thema. |
| | An. | os. | i. | a. | an. | e. | Titan. |
| | Is. | ios. | i. | in. | i. | i. | Metamorphôſis |
| | | dos. | di. | da. | i. | de. | Phillis. |
| | Ys. | yos. | yi. | yn. | y. | | Tethys. |
| | Es. | eos. | ei. | ea. | es. | e. | Achilles. |
| | As. | ntis. | nti. | anta. | a. | te. | Pallas. |
| | O. | ûs. | oî. | ô. | o. | o. | Dido, Calypſo, &c. |

These wordes being changed into Latine, are declined according to the latine rules.

GENDER.

GENDER, is the difference of a noune according to sexe. It is simple, or double.

The simple is naturall, or feigned. Naturall is masculine, or femenine.

A word of the masculine gender signifieth the male kinde, or those things, that are conceiued by the male kinde: and it is signed commonly with the pronoune hic, as, hic vir.

A word of the femenine gender signifieth the female kinde, or those thinges that are conceiued by the female kinde: and it is signed commonly with the pronoune hæc: as hæc mulier.

A word of the neuter gender signifieth neyther male, nor female, nor any thing that may be conceiued by them: and tis signed with the article hoc: as hoc saxum.

The manifold gender, is Epicene, or common.

A word of the Epicene gender signifieth the male, and female, vnder one voyce. and one gender: as, hic passer hæc aquila, both the heether, and theether: and to discerne the kind we say aquila mas, aquila femina.

A word of the a common gender signifieth the male and female, vnder one voyce, and two genders as, homo infans, bos, bubo: It is signed with hic, and hæc.

## Note.

a Where note, that so long as we speake of the same sexe, we may not change the gender of the adiective: as to say, canis hæc quam velocissimè curreret, nisi esset fœtus, is inconguous speaking.

Note also, that whereas the sexe is vtterly vnknowne, Authors do vse the same sometimes in the masculine, sometimes in the femenine gender, which words

words are therefore called of the Grammarians, the doubtfull gender, wherein we may change the gender of the adiective at our pleasure: as to say, durus est hic cortex, eademque est amara, is not incongruitie. But it is a needlesse thing to make this a distinct gender from the common, seeing that vpon notice of the sexe, it is the common: as, serpens, bubo, dama, halcionis, &c. And it is better in liueles things to keepe the gender of the adiective, than to change it, as common vse sheweth.

The Gender may be knowne three wayes, i, by { Signification / Termination / Declension.

1. By Signification.

By Signification the gender is knowne, whether the Substantiue be proper, or common.

Substantiues Proper, Masculines.

All proper names of gods, of men, & their proper offices; of Winds, Monethes, and Riuers, are of the masculine gender: as, Apollo, Virgilius lybs, October, Tibris.

Substantiues proper, fœminines.

ALl proper names of goddesses, of women and their proper offices: of townes, and cities, of Iles, and countries, (vnlesse they do end in on, or um) are of the feminine gender: as, Venus, Philotis Opus, Britannia, Persis.

Exception of Cities.

Abydos, Iesbos, Sulmo, Agragos, are masculines: Argos, Tybur, conclave, prœneste, Ispal, are neuters Anxur, is both masculine, and neuter.

Substantiues common, fœminines.

ALl names of trees are of the feminine gender: as alnus, cupressus, cedrus, fagus, ficus, malus, pyrus,

pyrus, prunus, vlmus, populus, platanus, mespilus, cerasus, buxus, citrus, corilus, fraxinus, terebinthus, Iuniperus, cornus, myrtus, amygdalus, Persicus, volemus, arbutus, Sambucus, esculus, tremulus, myrrhus, corymbus, caprificus, riotus, pinus, sorbus, spinus, ornus, &c. And most plants, as myrtus, nardus, intybus, &c.

Exception.

Except oleaster, pinaster, pyraster, taxus, rubus, masculines: libanus, pampinius, commons: Siler, suber, acer rhus, robur, neuters. Also many plants are masculines: Rhamnus, paliurus, helleborus, tribulus, thyrsus, thymus, calamus, ebulus, crocus, &c.

## Substantiues common, Epicænes.

ALl names of foules, beasts, and fishes, if the male, and female cannot manifestly be discerned are of the epicen gender. Now whether wee must vse the masculine, or the feminine, that must be learned by the declension.

## Substantiues common Nuters.

2 By Termination.

I. All words that end in um, (except the names of men, and women) and all in on, by o parvum, are of the nuter gender: as Noricum, Brundusium, cynnamomum, balsamum, barbiton, Ilion.

II. All nounes indeclinables, or vndeclined: as nil, gummi, nefas, &c.

III. All words in ma, deriued from the grekes, as thema, problema, &c.

IIII. All latine words ending in e, le, and al, except Sal, as, mare, rete, mantile, peperatore, capital, animal, &c.

V. All in vt: as, Caput, Synciput, occiput.

## 3. By Declenſon.

### The Gender of the firſt Pariſyllable.

I. All latine noumes of this declenſon, are of the feminine gender: as, Capra, menſa, mappa &c.

II. Greeke words in a, or e, derived from their ſecond declenſon: as, muſa, grammatice, rhetorice, Helene, which being made latine, words, are changed into a, as, grammatica, Rhetorica, Helena.

Exception.

I. The names of men with their offices, are maſculine: as, ſcriba, aſſecla, ſcurra, rabula, lixa, laniſta, &c.

II. All words derived from the firſt declenſon of the greekes which doe end in as, or es, and are made Latine, by changing as, and es, into a, as, Satrapas pa: athletes, ta: ſo cometa, planeta, nauta, pyrata, palæſtuta, Papa, agyrta, eremita, poëta, &c. except margarita, cataracta, charta, catapulta, cochlea, gauſapa, which being maſculines in the greeke, are feminines in latine.

III. Theſe are commons: Dama talpa, auriga: verna, conviva, refuga, profuga, pincerna, idiota, concuba, and compounds of venio, colo, gigno, cado: as aduena, convena: agricola, cælicola: indigena, terrigena, Graiugena: homicida, parricida, fratricida, matricida.

### The gender of the ſecond Pariſyllable.

I. All noumes of this declenſon, that end in er, ir ur, are maſculines: as, aper, vir, Satur,

II. All Latine noumes ending in us, and greeke noumes, in os: as dominus, logos.

Exception.

I. Humus, domus, alvus, colus, vannus, are

femininues.

II. Certaine Latine woꝛds in us, deriued from greeke woꝛds in os: as papyrus, antidõus, coſtus, dipthongs, byſſus, abyſſus, chryſtallus, ſynodus, ſaphyrus, eremus, arctus, biblus, periõdus, methõdus, plynthus, dialectus, apoſtrophus, balãnus, &c.

III. Theſe are commons, ficus a diſeaſe, phaſelus, lẽcyrus, atomus, groſſus, pharus, paradiſus.

## The Gender of the firſt Imparisyllable.

A Noume of this declenſion either doth not increaſe, oꝛ doth increaſe in the genittiue caſe.

A Noume increaſeth not, when there be no moꝛe ſyllables in the genetiue than in the nominatiue, and they end in es, is, er, oꝛ, e, wher eof es, and is, are femininues, er, maſculines, and e, neuters.

Exception of maſculines not increaſing.

I. Theſe maſculines are excepted. Verres, lienis, natalis, acinãces, aqualis, orbis, alcis, jugalis, callis, retis, enſis, ignis, follis, caulis fuſtis, crinis, menſis collis, panis, vnguis, penis, caſſis, torris, faſcis, vermis, piſcis, axis, vectis, poſtis, beſtis, laris, majalis, ædilis, riualis, aſſis with his compounds.

II. Theſe commons are excepted, Canalis, amnis, clunis, finis, teſtis, juvenis, reſtis, halciõnis, corbis anguis, ſcrobis, hoſtis, ſentis, civis, vates, perduellis, patruelis, exterris, canis, affinis, ſodalis contubernalis

Noumes, in er, are maiculines: but mater the femitnine, and linter the common.

A Noume increaſeth when there be moꝛe ſyllables in the genetiue, than in the Nominatiue, the penult whereof is ſhoꝛt, oꝛ long.

Nounes increaſing of the maſculine Gender.

I. M

I. Most Nounes in es, is, er, il, ul, increasing short in the last syllable but one, are masculines.

II. Nounes ending in or, os, and o, signifieng a body, the penult long in the genetiue case: except gentiles, as, saxo, ŏnis, &c.

III. All verballs in tor, sor, xor.

Nounes increasing of the fem. Gender.

Of the feminine gender are very many increasing long in the penult: as,

I. Nounes increasing by ātis, ūtis, and ūdis: as, pietas, virtus, palus.

II. Verballs in ūo, sio, xio, trix increasing by ōnis, and īcis long.

III. Many nounes of one syllable ending in s, with a consonant, before it: as ars, sticps.

IIII. Nounes in do, and go, increasing short by īnis: as, dulcedo, virgo.

V. Nounes in x, making the genetiue in cis: as pax, fæx, fax lanx.

Nounes increasing of the neuter gender.

I. Of the neuter gender are nounes ending in al, or el, increasing long: as animal, mel.

II. Nounes in ar, increasing long; and in ur increasing short: as far, murmur.

III. Nounes in en, increasing short by ĭnis, pecten: and compounds of cano are onely excepted: as, tibicen, rubicen, &c.

IIII. Nounes in us, increasing short by ĕris, and ŏris: as fædus, corpus.

Note, that these rules haue many exceptions, which are to be found in the terminations of the first Imparisyllable.

## The Gender of the Second Imparisy.

All nounes of this declenson are of the feminine,

gender: except meridies, which is of the masculine and dies, which is the common in the singular number, and the masculine in the plurall.

## The Gender of the declenſon Contarct

All nounes of this declenſon are masculines, and moſt of them verbalis in tus ſus xus: as auditus, tactus, cenſus, flexus.

### Exception.

Except theſe feminines following. Porticus, tribus ſocrus, nurus, manus, idus acus, penus, colus, lacus, ſpecus, anus, domus: and certaine trees: as, Laurus, cornus, ficus, pinus, quercus, platanus.

## Of Compariſon.

Compariſon betaketh a Subſtantiue, not property, but abuſiuely: as Neronior, a Nerone, Cynædior, a Cynædo, Pænior, a Pæno.

Thus farre of a Noune Homoclyte.

## Of a Noune Heteroclyte.

A Noune Heteroclyte is, to which theſe Accidents doe not euenly or vniformally agree, to wite number case declenſon, gender.

In heteroclite, is, barying, defective, redounding.

## Variation of Gender.

I. Theſe Nounes are maſculines in the ſingular number, and neuters in the plurall, Mænalus Dindimus, Ismarus, Tartarus, Taygetus, Tænarus, Pangæus, Maſſicus, Gargarus, Balitheus, iuſſus, ſupparus.

II. The

II. These are feminines in the singular, and neuters in the plurall, Pergamus, intybus, arbutus, Carbatus, amygdalus, pyrus sapellex, which may want the plurall.

III. These are neuters in the singular, and feminines in the plurall, delicium, epulum, nundinum, balneum. Iuvenall hath balnea.

IIII. These are neuters, in the singular, and masculines in the plurall, cælum, Argos, Elisium.

## Redundance of Gender.

I. These being masculines in the singular, are both masculines, and neuters in the plurall: as, sibilus, jocus, locus, avernus.

II. These being neuters, in the singular, are masculines, and neuters in the plurall: as, rastrum, frænum, silum, capistrum, claustrum.

## Defect in Nomber.

Furthermore an heteroclyte { number is defective, and that in } case.

## Defectives in the Singular.

I. These masculines want the singular, manes, majores, cancelli, liberi, antes, menses, monthly termes, lemures, fasti, minores, natales, penates, annales, amitini, antipodes, Boni, cani, cælites, centumviri, decemviri, decumani, clitellarij, cognati, conspirati, Euocati, inferi, libelli, Magni, Magnates, optimates, optimi, ordines, patricicij, patres, posteri, primores, proceres, purpurati, pythonici, reneſoles summates, superi, superiores, &c. Also many names of places: as, Gabij, locri, &c.

II. These feminines want the singular, exuviæ, phaleræ, grates, manubiæ, idus, antiæ, insidiæ minæ excubiæ,

excubiæ, nonæ, nugæ, tricæ, calendæ, inferiæ, feriæ primitiæ, plagæ, nettæ, valvæ, diuitiæ, nuptiæ, ædes, lactes, amitinæ, angustiæ, argutiæ, bigæ, blanditiæ, camenæ, copiæ, cupediæ, dapes, decumæ epulæ, facetiæ, fauces, fores, fortunæ, Icunculæ, Indubiæ, ineptiæ, pleiades, medicinæ, musæ, naïades opes, tenebræ, palpebræ, pecuniæ, potestates, præstigiæ partes, primæ, Secundæ, &c. reduviæ, reliquiæ, vmbræ, furiæ, Gratiæ, vergiliæ, vires, Sordes literæ, suppetiæ, quadrigæ, aquæ, Calidæ, thermæ funeræ. Also many names of places, as Sardes, Amiclæ, Pheræ, Thebæ, Athenæ, &c.

III. These Neuters want the singular, Arma, mapalia, mænia, munia, iusta, rostra, præcordia, sponsalia, lustra, estata, exta, crepundia, tesqua, cunabula, castra, acta, adespota, Æstiua, Alcedonia, ambarvalia, analecta apophoreta, armamenta, aromata, avia, aulæa, bona, centaurea, cibaria, cineralia, comitia, compita, compitalia, confinia, dictata donaria, chranica, femoralia, feminialia, forensia, freta, frivola, Ceraunia, genitalia, genualia, gesta, honoraria, Ilia, impedimenta, initia, initiamenta, lacticinia, lina, magnalia, magalia, menstrua miscellania missillia, muliebria, olympia, palearia, pascua, pecuaria, pensa, pontificia, popularia, præscita, pythia salsamenta, Semina, seria, suprema, fraga, flabra, talaria, Tempora, repotia, verenda, vlnatia, robigalia, funeralia, hiberna, juga,

Proper names: as, Cythera, Artaxata, Bactra, Susa, Ceraunia, Names of feastes. orgia, Nycteria, Bacchanalia, Floralia, &c. Titles of bookes, Bucholica, Georgica, chronica, &c.

## Defectiues in the plurall.

These want the plurall number.

i. All proper names of men, women, townes, countries, flouds, moneths, winds, and woods: and whatsoeuer is distinguished by some proper name. a for the most part.

ii. Vertues: as, prudentia, sapientia, iustitia, temperantia, &c. a vices: as, stultitia, invidia, desidia, &c. Diseases; mettals, aurum, argentum, ferrum, stannum, cuprum, plumbum, &c.

iii. All things that are rather measured than numbred: as, gluten, butyrum, sebum, &c.

iiii. Nounes signifying a certaine tyme: as, hesperus, vesper, diluculum, ætas, infantia, ævum. And pax, mors, vita, fames, salus, lues, tabes, labes, fides, soboles, pix, lux, sitis, bilis, talio, tussis, senecta, juventus, humus, cholera, pubes, fuga, quies. And also sol, aër, sanguis, æther, nemo, pontus, pelagus, limus, fimus, tellus, aluus, cæstus, album, fascinium, cænum, senium, lethum, salum, solum, barathrum, vitrum, viscum, penum, iustitium, nihilum, ver, lac, halec, gelu, solium, iubar.

V. Most herbes want the plurall.

## Defectiues in Case.

i. These haue no cases, and are therefore called Aptotes: fas, nefas, nihil, and nil, instar, cornu, genu, gummi, frugi, Tempe, sesqui, gausape, specus, veru, mancipi, mille, neuci, pondo, præsto, virus, huiusmodi, cuiusmodi, illiusmodi, istiusmodi, eiusmodi, necesse, necessum, quid, expes, tot, quot, and all numbers from three to an hundred.

ii. These haue but one case, called Monoptotes, noctu, natu, iussu, iniussu, promptu, permissu, Ablatiues. Macte, voc. ambage ab. so astu ab. sing. astus accus. plur. inficias, accus. plu. Solito, vsed alway after Comparatiues: as, plus solito.

iii. These haue two cases called Diptotes, fors forte, spontis sponte, repetundarum repetundis, iu-

geris iugere, verberis verbere, impetis, impete, melos melo, tabi tabo, chaos chao, plus, pluris, ſuppetiæ ſuppetias, grates grates. Amongſt all theſe, cornu, genu, ambāge, verberis, plus, iugeris, haue all the Caſes plurall, but veru wants the Nominatiue.

III. Theſe haue three caſes, called Triptotes, vicis vicem, vice: opis, opem, ope, which hath the plurall whole: but vicis wants the genetiue. So Dicam, dicas, dicis: ſitus, ſitum, ſitu.

V. Theſe want the Nominatiue caſe onely, and are called Pentaptotes: Dapis, remigis, precis, frugis, necis, proceris, faucis, ditionis. Nemo wanteth the genetiue. Frondis, vis, feminis, want the Datiue: and frons the Nominatiue, is vnuſuall. All relatiues, diſtributiues, Infinites, & all pronounes, except noſter, noſtras, meus, tu, doe want the Vocatiue Caſe. All which haue the plurall whole.

VI. Theſe neuters haue onely the three like Caſes in the plurall number: hordeum, far, forum, mel, muſſum, defrutum, and thûs.

VII. All nounes of the ſecond Imparifyllable haue the three like caſes plurall onely: except res, ſpecies, facies, acies, dies.

## Note.

Proper names, that haue the ſingular number, doe want the plurall: and they that haue the plurall want the ſingular.

## Redundance.

I. Theſe redound in gender, and termination, and ſome in declenſon alſo. Tonitrus, tonitru: clipeus, clipeum: baculus, baculum: ſenſus, ſum: tignus, tignum: taperum, tapete, tapes: punctus, punctum: ſinapi,

finapi, finapis : ſinus, num : menda, dum : peplus, plum : penus penus, penum peni, penus penoris : buxus, buxum : capulus, lum : viſcus, cum : cornu, cornum : eventus, tum : fimus, mum : angiportus tus, angiportum ti, angiportus ti : cacabus, bum : caduceus, um : calcaneus, um : calluſ, lum : calvities, um : candelaber, brum, capo, capus : curtus, rum : catinus, num : catillus, lum : catinulus, lum : cavus, vum : cingulus, lum : coccus, cum : clivus, vum : cementarius, um : crocus, cum : chryſtallus, lum : dorſus, um : faſcinus, um : galerus, rum : ganea, um gauſape, gauſapes, gauſapa, gauſapum : gipſus, um : labruſca, cum : helleborus, um : inceſtus, tum : malluvia, um : mandibula, um : mariſcus, cum : mulſtrale, tra, trum : palatus, tum : nardus, nardum : patibulus, lum : pileus, um : piſtrina, um : porrus, rum : pulviſculus, lum : ſarculus, lum : ſupparus, rus : thymus, mum : ſcalpellus, lum : peniculus, penicillus, lum : ſcrupulus, lum : caupo, cupo ; cupa, capa : batillus, lum ; cochleum, cochlis, cochlidium : corallius, um : expenſa, um : contagio, contages, contagium : conventus, tum : hibiſcus, cum : lixivia, um : pavus, pavo : Pergamus, mum : dupondius, vm : chirographus, phum : amygdala, lum : penaria. um.

II. **Theſe redound in termination, and ſome in declenſon, but not in gender** : gibbus, ber ; cucumis, mer : ſtipis, ſtips : cinis, ner ; vomis, mer : ſcobis, ſcobs : pulvis, ver : pubes, ber : honor, nos : labor, bos : ador, dos : arbor, bos : vapor, pos : delphin, phinus : apes, pis : plebs, plebis, plebes : elephas, phantus : Congrus, ger, Meleagrus, ger : Teucrus, cer.

III. **Theſe redound in declenſon onely.** Laurus, quercus, pinus, ficus, penus, domus, lacus, colus, cornus,

nus, a tree, which are of the second partisyllable, and contract declension.

The Substantiue absolute is interpreted: the Participle followeth.

## Of the participle Substantiue.

A Participle hath certaine accidents of a Substantiue, to wit, Case, and declension, but the signification of a verbe.

It is a gerund, or a supine.

### Of the Gerund.

The Gerund is of the second partisyllable, and is thus declined.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Nom.* | *Amandum.* |
| *Gen.* | *Amandi.* |
| *Dat.* | *Amando.* |
| *Accusat.* | *Amandum.* |
| *Voc.* | *Caret.* |
| *Ab.* | *Amando.* |

### Of the Supine.

The Supine, is of the declension contract, and is thus declined.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Accusat.* | *Amatum.* | a Diptote. |
| *Ablat.* | *Amatu.* | |

It serueth rather for elegancie and copie, than for necessitie.

Thus farre of the Substantiue: the Adiectiue followeth.

## Of a Noune Adiectiue.

ANOVNE Adiectiue cannot stand alone in reason, or signification, but must needes be ioyned to a [a] Substantiue: as, bonus vir, ingenuus puer, liber crassus, murus âlbus.

[a] which it assignifieth.

Of Adiectiues some are absolute, some are Participles.

The absolute is proper, or common.

The Adiectiue proper, signifieth an affection proper to the thing alone, to which it is ioyned: as, Gradivus is properly attributed to Mars, Quirinus, to Romulus, Enosigæus to Neptune. And are therefore sometimes put alone without the Substantiues: as, Verg. Remus, cum fratre Quirino, Iura dabant.

The Adiectiues common, signifieth an affection common to many Substantiues: as, piger, alacris, candidus, clemens.

## Of the accidents of an Adiectiue.

Seauen accidents befall an Adiectiue: Kind, Figure, Nomber, Case, Declenson, Gender, and Comparison.

## Of Kinde.

AN Adiectiue of the primitiue kind, is Interrogatiue, or Numerall.

Interrogatiues are these: quis, vter, qualis, quantus, quotus, quot, nunquis: which are also sometimes vsed indefinitely, sometimes [a] relatiuely. To these adde their Redditiues, talis, tantus, tot.

[a] Relatiues of quantitie, and qualitie.

## Of Numerals there be diuers kindes.

1. Cardinals, whereby things are absolutely numbred,

bred, as, vnus, duo, tres, quatuor, quinque, sex, &c.

II. Ordinals, whereby things are numbred according to their order: as, primus, secundus, tertius, &c.

III. Distributiues, whereby the same number is distributed to euery one of many things: as, creabantur olim bini consules, i. per singulos annos duo. For so the Orators (but not the Poets) doe vse the signification of these nounes. Binus, or bini, two distributed to each thing, ternus or terni, three to each thing, &c.

IIII. Partitiues, which either signifie many things seuerally: as, quisque, vnusquisque, vterque, neuter: or one thing of many: as, alter, alius, aliquis, cætera, reliquus. To which may bee added, quilibet, quivis, alteruter.

V. Vniuersals, which signifie the whole nature of the Substantiue: as, omnis, cunctus, nullus, nemo nihil, totus. Omnis signifieth all the particulars or seuerals of the discrete quantitie: Totus, the parts of the continued. To these adde i, compound Interrogatiues, which are Infinites: as, quisquis, qualisqualis, quantusquantus, quotusquotus, vteruter, quotquot: and compounded with cunque: as, quicunque, qualiscunque, quantuscunque, quotuscunque, quotcunque, and vniuersus, i. simul totus, or simul omnis.

VI. Particulars, which signifie not the whole nature, but some part of the Substantiue: as, aliquis, quisquam, vllus, quidam.

## Of the Deriuatiue.

A Nadiectiue is deriued of some other word, or of it selfe.

1. Of

I. Of the Substantiue proper, whether gentile: as, græcus, Latinus, Hæbræus, Anglus, or signifying a more particular place: as, Eboracensis, Londinensis, Cantabrigiensis, Oxoniensis, Dorobornensis, Ætonensis.

II. Of the Substantiue common are derined most adiectiues: as, herilis, seruilis, regius, paternus, hortensis, agrestis, maritimus, montanus, &c.

III. Of the Aduerbe: as hodiernus, hesternus, crastinus, clandestinus.

IIII. Of the præposition: as, supernus, supinus, posterior, inferior, &c.

## Of the Verball.

V. Of the verbe, whether it be gerundine, or supinall.

Adiectiues are made of the gerundine, whether it be actiue, or passiue.

They are made of the gerundine, actiue, two wayes.

I. By taking away the verball signification: as, abundans, amans, audiens, abstinens, efficiens, ferens, fugitans, furens, negligens, patiens, præstans reuerens, seruans, appetens, cupiens, experiens fugiens, fidens, metuens, obseruans, potens, sitiens, and all that may be compared: whose english most commonly end in ant, or ent.

II. By changing ans, or ens, into bundus, which are vsed instead of verbs, frequentatiues, that are wanting: therefore, because we cannot say, lusitans risitans, erritans, populitans, vititans, moritans, rubitans, furitans, Lætitans, we say, ludibundus, ridibundus, errabundus, populabundus, vitabundus, moribundus, furibundus, lætabundus: but rabiendus, not rubibundus.

They

They are made of the gerundiue passiue also two wayes.

I. By taking away the verball signification: as amandus, docendus, videndus, scribendus, as, puer amandus, a louely childe. Legendis veteribus proficis, by old autours reading thou profitest.

II. By changing ndus into bilis, as amabilis, detestabilis, penetrabilis, audibilis, docibilis, &c. signifying passiuely.

Adiectiues are made of the supinall actiue, and passiue two wayes.

I. By taking away the verball signification: as, nociturus, visurus, prætermissurus, &c. so consideratus, circumspectus disertus, cautus, tutus, ignotus, argutus, falsus, contentus, tacitus, profusus, fluxus, scitus, discretus, adultus, defectus, doctus, indoctus, consultus, eruditus, expertus, lapsus, inactus, suspensus, and all that may be compared.

II. By changing tus, Sus, xus, into tilis, silis, xilis, which signifie as their Supinalls doe sometimes actiuely, sometimes passiuely: as, fictilis, coctilis, rasilis, pensilis, flexilis, tortilis tonatilis, sutilis, sculptilis, altilis, volatilis, fissilis, vmbratilis, versatilis, ductilis, plicatilis, fissilis, solutilis, sectilis, docilis, fragilis, futilis, fluuiatilis, which signifie, passiuely, vnlesse their verbs want the passiue voice

Adiectiues are deriued also of themselues; to wite diminutiues and comparatiues.

Diminutiues follow the rules of the substantiue: as, parvulus, gemellus, integellus inteadulus, limatulus, politulus, putidulus, vllus, majusculus, minusculus, &c.

Comparatiues are deriued of their absolutes: as, durior, durissimus, of durus,

Of

## Of Figure.

Figure, is either ſimple: as, iuſtus, or compound: as, iniuſtus, or decompound: as, irreparabilis.

## Of Declenſon and Gender.

THE declenſon of the adiectiues is knowne by the termination. And all adiectiues are of euery gender, which is diſtinguiſhed by the termination alſo.

The termination is ſimple, or manifold.

The ſimple termination is when three genders are comprehended vnder one voyce: as, fælix, teres amans, particeps &c. Of ſuch like terminations are all Adiectiues of the firſt Impariſyllable: as.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Singulariter. | *Nomin. fælix* | Pluraliter. | *No. fælices, & fælicia.* |
| | *Genit. fælicis.* | | *Genetiue. fælicum.* |
| | *Datiue fælici.* | | *Datiue fælicibus.* |
| | *Acc. fælicē, & fælix.* | | *Acc. fælices, & fælicia* |
| | *Voc. ō, fælix.* | | *V. ō fælices, & fælicia* |
| | *Abl. fælice, & i.* | | *Ablat. fælicibus.* |

The manifold termination is double, or three fold.

The double termination comprehendeth the three genders vnder two voices: the maſculine, and feminine, alwayes ending in is, the neuter, in e, except comparatiues, that end in or, and us: as triſtis, triſte: triſtior, triſtius. They are of the firſt declenſon, impariſyllable not increaſing in the genetiue caſe: except comparatiues that increaſe by ōris.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Singulariter. | *Nom. triſtis, & triſte.* | Pluraliter. | *Nom. triſtes, triſtia.* |
| | *Genetiuo, triſtis.* | | *Gene. triſtium.* |
| | *Datiuo, triſti.* | | *Datiuo, triſtibus.* |
| | *Acc. triſtem, triſte.* | | *Acc. triſtes, triſtia.* |
| | *Voc. ō, triſtis, triſte.* | | *Voc. ō triſtes, triſtia.* |
| | *Ablatiuo, triſti.* | | *Ablatiuo. triſtibus.* |

The

The threefold termination is, when the three genders are expressed by three voyces. the masculine ending in er, ur, us: the feminine in a, the neuter in um. The feminine is of the first imparisyllable, and the other two of the second.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Singulariter. | Nom. bonus, a, um. | Pluraliter. | Nom. boni, æ, a. |
| | Gen. boni, æ, i. | | Gen. bonorum, arũ, orũ |
| | Dat. bono, æ, o. | | Dat. bonis. |
| | Acc. bonum, am, um | | Acc. bonos, as, a. |
| | Voc. bone, a, um. | | Voc. boni, æ a. |
| | Ab. bono, a, o. | | Ab. bonis. |

But these eight with their compounds make the genetiue case singular in ius, the dative in i, to wite vnus, totus, solus: and also vllus, alius alter, vter, neuter, which fiue lacke the vocatiue case. Vnus taketh the plurall number, except it be ioyned with a word, that lacketh the singular: as, vnæ literæ, vna, mænia.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Singulariter. | Nom. vnus, a um. | Pluraliter. | Nomini. vni, æ, a. |
| | Gen. vnius. | | Gen. vnorum, arum, orũ. |
| | Dat. vni. | | Dativo vnis. |
| | Acc. vnum, am, um | | Acc. vnos, as, a. |
| | Voc. vne, a, um. | | Voc. vni, vnæ, a. |
| | Ab. vno, a, o. | | Ab vnis. and so the rest |

## Of Comparison.

COmparison is, whereby the signification of many adiectiues is increased, or diminished. Therebe two degrees of comparison, after the absolute, or positiue.

The comparatiue somewhat exceedeth the positiue in signification. And it either hath this english word (more) before it, or the syllable (er) in the

the end of it: as, durior, more hard, harder.

The superlative exceeth the positive in the highest degree. And it hath either this english word (most) before it, or the syllable (est) in the end: as, durissimus, most hard hardest.

Comparison, is perfect, or defective.

Perfect comparison hath both degrees. It is regular, or Irregular.

Regular is, when the comparative, and superlative are formed of the first case of the positive m, that by putting to or, and us, this, by putting to i, and simus: as, duri, durior durius tristi, tristior, tristius, durissimus, tristissimus.

Irregular comparison departeth from this rule: bonus, melior, optimus, malus, pejor pessimus, Parvus, minor, minimus. Multus plurimus, multa plurima, multum, plus, plurimum.

If the nominative of the positive endeth in er, the superlative is formed of it, by putting to rimus: as pulcher, pulcherimus, integer integerrimus, tener tenerrimus. But dexter, maturus, and maturissimus, of mater vnusuall.

These sixe in lis, do forme the superlative, by changing lis, into limus: as, facilis, agilis, gracilis, docilis, humilis, similis.

Compounds of dico, volo, facio, make entior, and entissimus: maledicus, maledicentior, maledicentissimus: benevolus, benevolentior, benevolentissimus magnificus, magnificentior, magnificentissimus.

To these adde, vetus, veterior, veterrimus: nequam, nequior, nequissimus: dives, divitior, ditissimus, frugi, frugalior, frugalissimus.

If a vowell come before us, it is compared by magis, and maximè: as, pius, magis pius, maximè pius: assiduus, magis assiduus, maximè assiduus.

Defectiue Comparison.

| | |
|---|---|
| Ocyor, ocissimus, of ὠκὺς, | Sinister, sinisterior. |
| Potior, potissimus. | Iuvenis, iunior. |
| Inclytus, inclytissimus. | Senex, senior, maximus natu. |
| Opimus, opimior. | Ingens ingentior. |
| Novus, novissimus, new. | Infinitus, infinitior. |
| Novissimus, last. | Satur, saturior. |
| Adolescens adolescentior. | Affiduus affiduior. } more seldome. |
| Meritus, meritissimus. | Strenuus, strenuior } |

These Superlatiues are very seldome vsed.

| | |
|---|---|
| Egregiissimus. | Perpetuissimus. |
| Mirificissimus. | Tuissimus. |
| Pientissimus, and pissimus. | Exiguissimus, Ovid. |
| Ipsissimus. | Multissimus, Cic. |

## Of the Heteroclyte.

The heteroclyte is redounding, or defectiue.

These adiectiues following being of the double termination, redound in the nominatiue case: as Campester, campestris, stre, volucer, cris, cre: Celeber, bris, bre: celer, ris, re: So, saluber, pedester, equester, acer, palustr, alacer, sylvester inde cor, ris, re.

These following redound in termination. inermus inermis: imbecillus, imbecillis: bijugus, bijugis: enervus, enervis: declivus, declivis effrænus, effrenis: insonnis, insomnis: sublimus sublimis: inanimus, inanimis, elumbus, elumbis, hilarus, hilaris.

These are defectiue in nomber, ambo, duo, tres, tria, mille, millia, ducenti, æ, a, trecenti, æ, a, cæteri, yet there is, decætero, But cæter, or cæterus is now vtterly vnvsuall. Plærique hath onely the plurall, and vnus, sometimes lacketh the singular. Likewise compounds of plus, as, complures, many, vsed positiuely, and perplures very many.

## Of the participle Adiectiue.

The Participle hath certaine accidents of the adiectiue, viz. Number, Case, Declension, Gender. But the signification of a verbe.

It is Gerundiue, or Supinall.

The Gerundiue endeth in ans, and ens, or in andus, and endus: as, amans, docens, amandus, docendus.

The Supinall endeth in Rus, or in tus, sus, xus, as, amaturus, visurus, nexurus, : amatus, visus, nexus, and one in uus, as, mortuus.

The Gerundiue in ans. or ens, is declined like felix. But all the rest like bonus. Thus much of the reall noune.

## Of the Noune personall.

NOUNE personall signifieth one thing alone, with expresse difference of a certaine person. It is therefore called a Pronoune. Persona, i, persæ vna.

There bee sixteene Pronounes, Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic is, qui, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras vestras To which is added the noune cuias.

These three, ego, tu, sui, are Substantiues, the rest are Adiectiues.

Furthermore, a Pronoune is demonstratiue. or relatiue.

The demonstratiue signifieth a person, by shewing. or declaring it primarily; whereof there bee 8. ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, his, is.

Ego, signifieth, or sheweth himselfe: as, ego scribo. Therefore it is called the first person.

Tu, ſheweth him, to whom we ſpeake: Therefore it is called the ſecond perſon: as, tu ſcribis. And euery vocatiue caſe is of this perſon: as, ô Amarylli.

The other demonſtratiues ſhew the thing, whereof we ſpeake: as, ille ſcribit. Therefore all maner of nounes, except ego, and tu, are of the third perſon.

Sui, with his derbatiue ſuus, ſheweth the perſon whereof we ſpeake, reciprocally, i. it hath reſpect, or relation to the ſame thing that went before: as Petrus nimium admiratur ſe. Parcit erroribus ſuis.

Hic, ſheweth him, that is with me, or next to me.

Iſte, ſheweth him, that is with ther, or next to thee. Which we alſo vſe in ſpeaking of a thing with contempt: as, Iſtum æmulum quoad poteris, ab ea pellito.

Ille, ſheweth him, that is a part from vs both, which we alſo vſe in ſhewing the eminence, and excellence of a thing: as, Alexander, ille magnus.

Ipſe, hath the ſignification of the three perſons: as, ipſe vidi, ipſe videris, ipſe dixit. And it is ioyned to nounes, and pronounes: as, ipſe ego, ipſe ille, ipſe Herculos. Likewiſe, ille ego, ille ipſe, ille ſannio.

Is, ſheweth him, that is farre from vs, and it alſo ſheweth a perſon, or thing emphatically: as, is eſto, it is euen he

The relatiue maketh mention of, or rehearſeth a thing that was ſhewed before: whereof there be fiue, hic, ille, iſte, is, idem, qui.

Idem, ſignifieth the ſame, the very ſame, or ſelfe-ſame. And it is ioyned to all perſons: as, ego is dem adſum. Tu idem has nuptias perge facere. Idem

eſt

est vetus.

Qui, is a pronoune infinite, having no certaine difference of person, but may indifferently be joyned to all persons.

When hic and ille haue reference to two things aforegoing, hic is referred to the latter, and ille to the former most commonly: as, agricolæ contrarium est pastoris propositum: Ille (agricola) quammaximo subacto, & puro solo gaudet, hic (pastor) novali, graminoloque. But sometimes they are referred contrarily.

## Of the Accidents of a pronoune.

Seauen accidents befall a pronoune: Kind, Figure, Number, Case, Declenson, Person.

## Of Kinde.

OF Pronounes, some are primitiues, some derivatiues.

Primitiues are Demonstratiues, and relatiues. Deriuatiues, are derived of the Primitiues.

Of Derivatiues some are Possessiues, some Gentiles.

Possessiues signifie something, as pertaining to the possessour: there be fiue possessiues, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, which are derived of mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri.

Gentiles, are so called because they signifie pertaining to countries, nations, sects, or factions.

There be two Gentiles, nostrâs, and vestrâs, contracts of nostratis, and vestratis; to which is added the Interrogatiue cujês, or cujâtis.

## Of Figure.

FIgure is simple, as, Ego; or compounded, as, Egomet.

A pronoune is compounded of words, or by apposition of syllables.

I. It is compounded with a Substantiue: as, cuiusmodi, huiusmodi, eiusmodi, illiusmodi, istiusmodi.

II. With it selfe, and that in all cases, or in some.

In all cases as, Egoipse, tuipse, suipsius.

In some case: as, Nom. istic, istæc, istoc vel istuc. Ac. istunc, istanc, istoc, vel istuc. Ab. istoc, istac, istoc. Plur. istæc neuter, of iste, and hic. So illic, illæc, illoc vel illuc, &c. of ille, and hic. So quisquis, quicquid, Acc. quicquid, Ab. quoquo, quaqua, quoquo.

III. With an Aduerbe: as, eccum, eccam, eccos, eccas, of ecce, and cum. Ellum, ellam, ellos, ellas, of ecce, and illum. So idem, of is, and demùm.

IIII. With coniunctions: as, hiccine, hæccine, hoccine. Accusat. hunccine, hanccine, hoccine, plu. hæccine neuter.

V. With Prepositions: as, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum, quibuscum.

These are compound with apposition of syllables whereof some are placed after the word, some before.

Met, is set after ego, tu, sui, but the nominatiue of tu is excepted, and the genetiue of sui.

Te, is set after tu, and te: as, tute, tete.

Ce, is set after these obliques in s, huius, illius, istius, his, hos, illos, istos, has, illas, istas.

Pte, is set after the ablatiue case of all possessiues: as, meôpte, meâpte, &c.

Dam, vis, libet, cunque, are set after qui: as, quidam, quivis, &c.

Nam, piam, putas, quam, que, are set after quis, as, quisnam, quispiam, &c.

The se

Theſe are placed before the word, En, ne, alius, num, ſi: as, ecquis, nequis, aliquis, nunquis, ſiquis, which in the feminine ſingular, and neuter plurall haue qua, not quæ: as, ſiqua mulier, nequa flagitia.

## Of Number, and Caſe.

NUmber, and Caſe, are the ſame with the nouns reall.

## Of Declenſon, and Gender.

EGo, tu, ſui, are of the maſculine gender, when a man ſpeaketh, but of the feminine, when a woman ſpeaketh. And they are of a peculiar manner of decling: as, are alſo, all demonſtratiues, and relatiues. As.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Singulariter: | *Nominatiuo Ego* | Pluraliter: | *Nominatiuo nos* |
| | *Genitiuo mei* | | *Ge. noſtrûm, vel noſtri* |
| | *Datiuo mihi* | | *Datiuo nobis* |
| | *Accuſatiuo me* | | *Accuſatiuo nos* |
| | *Vocatiuo caret* | | *Vocatiuo caret* |
| | *Ablatiuo à me* | | *Ablatiuo à nobis* |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Singulariter. | *Nominatiuo Tu* | Pluraliter. | *Nominatiuo vos* |
| | *Genitiuo tui* | | *Ge. veſtrûm vel veſtri* |
| | *Datiuo tibi* | | *Datiuo vobis* |
| | *Accuſatiuo te* | | *Accuſatiuo vos* |
| | *Vocatiuo ô tu* | | *Vocatiuo ô vos* |
| | *Ablatiuo à te* | | *Ablatiuo à vobis* |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Singulariter and Pluraliter | *Nominat. caret* | | *Accuſatiuo ſe* |
| | *Genitiuo ſui* | | *Vocatiuo caret* |
| | *Datiuo ſibi* | | *Ablatiuo à ſe* |

| Singulariter. | Pluraliter. |
| --- | --- |
| Nom. iſte, iſta, iſtd | Nomin. iſti, iſtæ, iſta |
| Genitiuo iſtius | Ge. iſtorũ, iſtarũ, iſtorũ |
| Datiuo iſti. | Datiuo iſtis |
| Ac. iſtum iſtã, iſtud | Accu. iſtos, iſtas, iſta |
| Vocatiuo caret | Vocatiuo caret |
| Ablat. iſto, iſta, iſto | Ablatiuo iſtis. |

So is ille declined, and alſo ipſe, but in the neuter gender it maketh ipſum, not ipſud.

| Singulariter. | Pluraliter. |
| --- | --- |
| Nominat. hoc, hæc, hoc | Nomin. hi, hæ, hæc |
| Genitiuo huius | Gen. horum, harũ |
| Datiuo huic | Datiuo his. (horũ |
| Accuſ. hunc, hanc, hoc | Acc. hos, has, hæc |
| Vocatiuo caret | Vocatiuo caret |
| Ablatiuo hoc, hac, hoc | Ablatiuo his. |

| Singulariter. | Pluraliter. |
| --- | --- |
| Nominat. is, ea, id | Nominatiuo ĩ, eæ, ea |
| Genitiuo eius | Ge. eorũ, earũ, eorum |
| Datiuo ei | Datiuo ĩs vel eis |
| Accu. eum, eam, id | Accuſ. eos, eas, ea |
| Vocatiuo caret | Vocatiuo caret |
| Ablatiuo eo, ea, eo. | Ablatiuo ĩs vel eis. |

So idem, eadem, idem.

| Singulariter. | Pluraliter. |
| --- | --- |
| Nom. qui, quæ, quod | Nom. qui, quæ, quæ |
| Genitiuo cuius | g. quorum. quarũ, quorũ |
| Datiuo cui | Dat. quibus vel quis |
| Ac. quem, quã, quod | Accu. quos, quas, quæ |
| Vocat. caret. (qui | Vocatiuo caret |
| Ab. quo, qua, quo, vel | Ab. quibus, vel quis |

All Poſſeſſiues are declined like bonus, as meus mea, meum, &c. and Gentiles like triſtis: as, noſtras, and noſtrate. gen. noſtratis, &c. Tu, meus, noſter, and noſtras, haue onely the vocatiue caſe.

## Of Perſon.

There be three perſons, as is aforeſayde, ego, tu,

tu, ille. And of the third person, are all maner of nounes.

A noune is interpreted: the verbe followeth.

## Of A Verbe.

VERBE, is a part of speech, that consignifieth a noune, to expresse the manifold meaning of the minde. verbum, i, verum, bonum.

In respect of the noune, which it consignifieth, it is personall, or impersonall.

A Verbe personall hath euermore some person ioyned withit: as I go, amo, I loue.

The impersonall hath no person, and therefore the signe (it) supplyeth the place thereof as oportet it behoueth.

II. Diuision.

In regard of signification onely, it is Substantiue, or Adiectiue.

A verbe substantine signifieth the being of the person, or thing, as sum, forem, fio, existo, exto.

The verbe adiectiue signifieth some other thing from the being thereof. Therefore all verbs except these fiue are adiectiues.

III. Diuision.

In regard of signification, and boyce, a verbe is actiue, passiue, neuter, deponent, and common.

A verbe [a] actiue endeth in o, and signifieth to do as, amo, I loue, and by putting to r, it may be a passiue, as, amor. a eteroenergetica.

A verbe, [b] passiue endeth in r, and signifieth to suffer, as, amor I am loued, and by taking away r, it may be an actiue, as, amo. b. eteropathetica.

A verbe neuter endeth in o, or m, and cannot take r, to make him a passiue: as, curro, sum. It signifieth,

signifieth sometimes actiuely, sometimes passiuely.

Of Neuters therebe three kindes.

e. auto energeica.

I. Some signifie Action, or doing complete, and perfited in the verbe it selfe, without passing into an outward patient: as, curro, ambulo, jaceo, dormio, pluit, ningit.

d. Idiopathe.

II. Some do signifie [d] passion, or suffring complete, in the verbe it selfe, without receiuing the same from an outward agent: as, palleo, rubeo, albesco, nigresco. all which are neuters absolute.

III. Some besides these signifie action, or doing which passeth into a word of their owne signification, or a neere signification; and therefore haue the third person singuler passiue, and often the third plurall: as, aro agrum, aratur, and arantur, agri: navigo, navigatur, and navigantur, so, poto, pecco, nato, bibo, curro, vivo, &c. To these adde all, to which the figure prosopopeia may be applyed.

Where note, that all neuters, which cannot be made impersonalls in the actiue voyce, are made impersonalls in the passiue voyce: as curritur, studetur.

e. Autoenergeticon.

A verbe deponent hath the passiue voyce, but the signification of the actiue, as loquor verbum or of the neuter, as glorior.

A verbe common hath the passiue voyce, and both actiue, and passiue signification: as, osculor te, osculor a te, So criminor, consolor, stipulor, speculor, adulor, frustror, dignor, testor, interpretor, amplector, meditor, experior, mentior, &c.

Note.

f. Idiopathe.

I, comming immediately before any word is a signe, that it is a verbe actiue, deponent, or neuter, transitiue: as, doceo I teach, experior, I trye:

But

But, am, is, art, are, was, were, be bene, are signes of the passiue, or neuter of the passiue signification.

IIII. Diuision.

In regard of construction, a verbe is transitiue, or intransitiue.

Intransitiue, or absolute is any verbe whose action alone, without any case after it, satisfieth a question made by quid agis? or quid facis? as, quid agis? amo, I loue, or am in loue, quid facis? Scribo I write, or am writing. Disco I learne or follow learning, &c. which otherwise are transitiues: as, amo magistrum. Scribo epistolas.

Transitiue, is euery verbe, whose action requireth some case of a noune, to absolue, and perfect the same. It passeth immediatly into the accusatiue case: and mediately into others most comonly: as, lego Vergilium, do tibi librum. Dedit mihi vestem pignori propria manu.

## Of the Accidents of a Verbe.

Eight Accidents befall a verbe, kinde, figure, moode, tense, Person, noumber, conjugation, formation.

## Of Kinde.

Kinde, is twofolde. Primitiue: as, ferueo: Derivatiue: as, ferveſco.

## Of Derivatiues.

There be fiue kindes of Derivatiues.

1. Meditatiues, or augmentatiues, which signifie the continuation, intension, or increasing of the primitiue: as, labaſco, caleſco, edormiſco, tumeſco albeſco, crudeſco, ſordeſco, &c. which haue the same signification with compounds of fio, which are

are wanting: as, sordesco, is the same, that sordeo, should be. And many of these are vsed to the primitiue: as conticesco, adhæresco, delitesco, concupisco, labasco, obdormisco, contremisco, expaveſco, hisco, timesco, &c.

II. Frequentatiues, doe end in to, so, xo, tor: as, visito, affecto, scriptito, viso, quasso, nexo, texo, vexo, sector, scitor, scisscitor and they signifie a certaine continuance, or endeavour: as dictito, I speake often, viso, I goe to see. To these adde vellico, fodico, albico, and such like, called commonly Apparatiues.

III. Desideratiues doe end in ŭrio: as, Lectŭrio, parturio, esurio, cænaturio, canturio &c. I purpose, desyre, or am about to read, &c.

IIII. Diminutiues end in lo, or sso: as, sorbillo, to sipple, cantillo, to chirpe, pipe, or whimper, pitisso, to bibble: of sorbeo, canto, bibo.

V. Imitatiues, do signifie imitation, or following: as, patrisso, Atticisso, Platonisso which being derived from the greeke are improper to the Latines: who rather vse, Græcor, to riot, cornicor, to chatt, or cackle, vulpinor, to play the fore. Bacchor, to swagger, or play the Deuill.

Some words seeme to be derived of the greeke: as, percello, of κέλλω, impleo, πλῶ, Do, of δόω, Plecto, of πλήτω, reboo, of βοάω.

## Of Figure

FIgure, is twofold, simple: as, facio, compound: as, calefacio. The affection of compound verbs, is Enallage.

## Of Enallage.

Enallage

Enallage, is when the first vowell of the present tense and perfect tense with all tenses formed thereof is changed into, e, i, or u.

I. Egallage of a into e.

These verbs being compounded, damno, lacto, sacro, fallo, arceo, fatiscor, tracto, partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo, pario, change a into e: as contemno, delecto, consecro, refello, &c. comperio, and reperio (of pario) make comperi, and reperi in the preterperf. The rest make perui as, aperui, operui. Compesco, and dispesco, (of pasco) make pescui in the preterperf. the rest admitte, no change as, epasco, epavi, &c.

II. Enallage of a, e, æ, into i.

These verbs, being compounded, habeo, lateo, salio, statuo, cado, Lædo, pango pegi, cano, cæro cædo, tango, egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, tapio, change the first vowell of all tenses into i, as perhibio, perhibui, deliteo, delitui, &c. so concino, concinui, obcano, displiceo, displicui, except complaceo, and perplaceo: And depango, oppango, circumpango, repango, kepe a still.

Præmineo, emineo, promineo, immineo (of maneo manfi) make minui in the preterperf. others follow the simple verbe, as permaneo, remaneo, premansi, remansi, &c.

III. Enallage of a, into u,

These verbs, Scalpo, calco, salto bring compounded change a, into u: as, exculpo, inculco, resulto. But claudo, quatio, lavo, lose a, as, occludo, excludo: percutio, excutio: proluo, diluo.

Exception.

These following change the first vowell of the present, but not of the preterperfect tense, into i, as

ago,

ago, emo, ſedeo, rego, frango, capio, jacio, lacio, ſpecio, premo: as redigo, redegi (of ago egi) reſideo reſedi (of ſedeo ſedi) &c.

But perago and ſatago admit no change. Dego, and cogo loſe a. Rego looſeth the firſt ſyllable in pergo, and ſurgo, in the preſent tenſe.

Facio being compounded with a prepoſition changeth a, into i: as, inficio, diſicio, &c. elſe not, as, calfacio, tertifacio, benefacio.

Lego, being compounded with theſe prepoſitions, re, ſe, per, præ, ſub, trans admitteth no chang as, relego, ſelego, perlego, &c. other wiſe it is changed: as, colligo, eligo, collegi, elegi, &c. But theſe three intelligo, diligo, negligo, make lexi, not legi in the preterperfect tenſe.

Note.

There be many compounds, whoſe ſimples are not in vſe: as, defendo, offendo, aſpicio, conſpicio adipiſcor, experior, comperior, expedio, impedio, deleo, imbuo compello, appello, incendo, accendo, ingruo, congruo, infligo, inſtigo, impleo, compleo, &c.

## Of Moode.

Moode is the diverſe application of the verbe to the thing, which it conſignifieth.

It is the ſame, that caſe is in a noune.

It is finite, or infinite.

A finite verbe, is determinate by noumber, and perſon.

It is of vnlike tenſes, or like tenſes.

The finite of vnlike tenſes is the indicatiue, and imperatiue.

The Indicatiue moode ſheweth a reaſon true, or falſe, as ego, amo, I loue: or aſketh a queſtion as, amas tu? doeſt thou loue.

The

The Imperatiue biddeth, or commaundeth: as, ama, loue thou.

The finite of like tenses, is whose tenses, are alike in all numbers, and persons: it is absolute or subiunctiue.

The absolute can absolue, or perfect a tense by it selfe. It is Optatiue, or Potentiall.

The Optatiue wisheth, or desireth, & is knowne by these signes, *would God, I pray, or God grant*, and hath alwayes an aduerbe of wishing ioyned with it, as, vtinam amem.

The Potentiall is knowne by these signes, *may, can, might, would, should*, or *ought*; as, amem, I may, or can loue. And it may stand without an aduerbe ioyned to it.

The Subiunctiue moode dependeth on another verbe in the same sentence, to perfect his signification. And it hath euer some coniunction ioyned with it: as, cùm amarem, eram miser.

The Infinite moode, is not determinate with number, and person. And it hath commonly the signe (*to*) ioyned to it: as, amare, to loue.

## Of Tense.

TEnse, is the difference of a verbe in regard of tyme.

There be fiue tenses, or tymes.

1. The present tense speaketh of the tyme, that now is: as, amo, I loue.

2. The preterimperfect tense speaketh of the tyme not altogether past: as, amabam, I loued, or did loue.

3. The preterperfect tense speaketh of the tyme fully past: as, amaui, I haue loued. It is knowne by

the

the signe (*haue*).

4. The preterpluperfect tense speaketh of the tyme past long agoe: as, amaueram, I had loued. It is knowne by the signe (*had*).

5. The Future tense speaketh of the tyme to come: as, amabo, I shall, or will loue. It is knowne by the signe, *shall*, or *will*.

## Of Person.

PErson, is threefold in both numbers, as hereafter appeareth.

## Of Number.

NUmber, is two-fold, as hereafter appeareth.

## Of Coniugation.

COniugation is answerable to Declension in a noune. Verbes in o, haue foure Coniugations, which are thus knowne.

The first Conugation, hath ā long before re, ris: as, amāre, amāris.

The second hath ē long before re, and ris: as, docēre, decēris.

The third hath ĕ short before re, and ris: as, legĕre, legĕris.

The fourth hath ī long before re, and ris: as, audīre, audīris.

But the verbe Sum hath a peculiar manner of declining.

## The declining of the verbe Substantiue *Sum*.

### Indicatiue Moode Singular.

1. Sum,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 1. Sum, I am, es, est. | Pluraliter. | Sumus, estis, sunt. |
| tus. | 2. Eram, I was, erat, erat. | | eramus, eratis, erant. |
| | 3. Fui, I haue beene, fuisti, | | fuimus, fuistis, fuêrunt vel |
| sus. | fuit. | | ere. |
| | 4. Fueram, I had beene, | | fueramus, ratis, rant. |
| xus. | ras, rat. | | |
| | 5. Ero, I shall, or will be, | | erimus, eritis, erunt. |
| | eris, erit. | | |

## Imperatiue moode present tense.

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sis, | be thou | Sit, | pluraliter. | simus | Sitis, | Sint, |
| Es, | | Esto, | | | Este, | Sunto |
| Esto, | | | | | Estote | |

## Optatiue moode Singular.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 1. Sim, I pray God I be, sis, sit. | Pluraliter. | simus, sitis, sint. |
| | 2. Essem, would God I were, | | essemus, essetis, es- |
| tus. | ses, set. | | sent. |
| | 3 fuerim, I pray God I haue | | rimus, ritis, rint. |
| sus. | beene, ris, rit. | | |
| | 4. fuissem, would God I had de | | issemus, issetis, is- |
| xus. | beene, sses, sset. | | sent. |
| | 5. fuero, God grant I be here- | | erimus, eritis, e- |
| | after, ris, rit. | | rint. |

## Potentiall moode Singular.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 1. Sim, I may, or can be, sis, sit. | Pluraliter. | simus, sitis, sint, |
| tus. | 2. Essem. I might, or could be, | | |
| | esses, esset. | | essemus, essetis, es- |
| | 3 fuerim, I might, could, | | sent. |
| | should, or ought to haue | | |
| sus. | beene, ris, rit. | | fuerimus, ritis, rint. |
| | 4. fuissem, I might, could, | | |
| | should, or ought to had beene, | | |
| xus. | ses, set. | | fuissemus, setis, sent. |
| | 5. fuero, I may, or can be here- | | |
| | after, ris, rit. | | fuerimus, ritis, rint. |

## Subiunctiue moode Singular, *Caret.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 1. Sim, when I am. sis, sit. | Pluralis. | simus, sitis, sint. |
| tus. | 2. essem, when I was, esses, esset. | | essemus, setis, sent. |
| sus. | 3. fuerim, when I haue beene, ris, rit. | | fuerimus, ritis, rint. |
| xus. | 4. fuissem, when I had beene, sses, sset. | | fuissemus, setis, ssent. |
| | 5. fuero, when I shall, or will be, ris, rit. | | fuerimus, ritis, rint. |

## Infinitiue moode.

1. 2. Esse, to be. 3. 4. fuisse, to haue or had beene.

5. Fore, vel futurum esse, to be hereafter. Particip. futurus.

## Note.

These tenses supplie the want of diuerse tenses of Verbes in or, name of the preterperfect tense of the Indicatiue moode, and all tenses formed thereof: and are combined after this sort, after the Supinals in tus, sus, xus, and uus: as, hereafter followeth.

1. Con. AMo, amas, r, ris vel re, amavi, tus sum, vel fui, i, amare, amandi, do, dū, amatum, amatu, amans, s, dus, amaturus, to loue: to be loued.

2. Con. { Doceo, doce r, ris, re, ctus sum, fui, i, docendi, do, dum, s, dus, doctum, doctu, docen s, docturus, to teach: to be taught.

3. Con. { Lego, leg is, le gi, leg ere, legendi, do, dum, r, eris, ere, ctus sum, fui, i, s, dus. lectum, lectu, legen s, lecturus to read, to be read.

4. Con. { Audio, audi s, audi vi, audir e, audiendi, do, dum, r, ris, re, tus sum, fui, i. s, dus auditum, auditu, audien s auditurus to heare: to be heard.

## Of Deponents, and Commons.

DEponents, and Commons are declined like the passiue, saiuing that they haue the Gerunds, Supines, and participles actiue also, as appeareth in the examples. But when Deponents doe not gouerne an Accusatiue after them, they want the Gerundiue in dus.

## Note.

Dor and der, are not vsed in the simple. Neyther for, nor fer, which commeth of, for.

## Here followeth a Table of the Declining of Verbes.

# A GLASSE OF VERBES.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Con. | o, ãs, | avi, | ndi, do, dum, are, | rus, atum. |
| 2. Con. | eo, es, | üi, | ndi, do, dum, ere, | rus, itum, |

## A Table whereby to decline all Verbes.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3. Con. | Bo, fit | Bi, fit | | Tum, |
| | Co, | Ci, | | ctum, |
| | Do, | Di, | | Sum, |
| | Go, | Xi, | | ctum, |
| | Ho, | Xi, | | ctum, |
| | Lo, | üi, li, | | itum, ssum, |
| | Mo, | üi, mi | | itum, tum, |
| | No, | Vi, ni, | | tum, |
| | Po, | Psi, | ndi, do, dũ, ere, | Prum, |
| | Quo, is, | Qui, | | Tum, rus, u, |
| | Ro, | Vi, | | Tum, |
| | So, | Sivi, si, | | tum, ssum, |
| | Sco, | Vi, | | tum, |
| | To, | Ti, | | tum, |
| | Vo, | Vi, | | tum, |
| | Cio, | Ci, | | ctum, |
| | Dio, | Dij, | | Sum, |
| | Gio, | Gi, | | ctum, |
| | Pio, | Pi, | | Tum, |
| | Rio, | Ri, | | Sum, |
| | Tio, | Si, | | ssum, |
| | V-o. | üi. | | itum, |

The exceptions of all conjugations are to be found in the rules of formation.

Change o, to io, into ere, and it is the Infinitive moode active: Change ere into i, and it is the Infinitive passive.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4. Con. | io, is, | ivi, | endi, do, dum, ire, | rus, itum, |

NOTE

That the preter perfect tense of euery conjugation, endeth like some one of the third, and hath the same Supine accordingly.

## Indicatiue moode præsent tense Singular.

am d are d is d
I loue, thou louest, he loueth
r, ris vel re, ur,
Amo, amas, amat,,
r ris,re ur
Doceo, doces, docet,
r eris,re ur,
Lego, legis, legit,
r ris,re, ur,
Audio, audis, audit,

Pluraliter.

are d are d are d
wee loue, yee loue, they loue,
r mini ur
Amamus, amatis, amant,
r mini ur
Docemus, docetis, docent,
r mini ur
Legimus, legitis, legunt,
r mini ur
Audimus, auditis, audiunt,

Preterimp.

r
Amabam,
r
Decebam,
r
Legebam,
r
Audiebam

was
I loued, or did loue.
ris,re ur r mini ur.
bas, bat. Pl. bamus, batis, bant.

Preterperfect.

tus sum vel fui,
Amavi,
tus sum vel fui,
Docui,
ctus sum vel fui,
Legi,
tus sum vel fui,
Andivi.

bene.
I haue loued.
sti, it. Pl. ĭmus, istis, erunt vel êre.

Preterplup.

tus eram, vel fuerã
Amaveram,
ctus eram vel fueram
Docueram,
ctus eram, vel fueram.
Legeram.
tus eram, vel fuerã.
Audiveram.

bene
I had loued.
ras, rat. Pl. ramus, ratis, rant.

I shall, or will loue.

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Amabo, r | eris, re | ur | | r | mini | ur | |
| Docebo, r | bis, | bit, | Pl. bimus, | | bitis, | bunt, | |
| Legam, r | ris, re | ur | | r | mini | ur | |
| Audiam r | es, | et. | Pl. êmus, | | etis, | ent, | |

## Imperatiue Moode, præsent tense Singular.

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| be thou loued, let him be loued. | | | be | be | be yee loued, let them be loued. | | |
| loue thou, let him loue, | | | let vs loue. | | loue yee, | loue they | |
| Ama, re | amet, ur | Plu. | amemus, r | | Amate, mini | ament, ur | |
| Amato, r | amato, r | | | | Amatote, minor | amanto, r | |
| Doce, re | doceat, ur | Plu. | doceamus, r | | docete, mini | doceant, ur | |
| Doceto, r | doceto, r | | | | docetote, minor | docento, r | |
| Lege, re | legat, ur | Plu | legamus, r | | legite, mini | leganto, ur | |
| Legito, r | legito, r | | | | Legitote, minor | legunto, r | |
| Audi, re | audiat, ur | Plu. | audiamus, r | | audite, mini | audiant, ur | |
| Audito, r | audito, r | | | | auditote, minor | audiunto, r | |

## Optatiue Moode præsent tense Singular, *Vtinam.*

Amem

God grant I loue,

Ame m, ame s, amet, Plu. amemu s, ame tis, ament,
Docea m,
Lega m, a s, at, Plu. amu s, a tis, ant,
Auda m,

Preterimperf.

Amare m,
Docer m, re s, ret, Plu. remu s, re tis, rent.
Legere m,
Audire m,

Would god I loued, or did loue.

Praeterperf.

tus sim, fuerim,
Ama verim,
ctus sim fuerim
Do cuerim
ctus sim, fuerim,
Le gerim,
tus sim, fuerim,
Audi verim,

I pray god I haue loued.

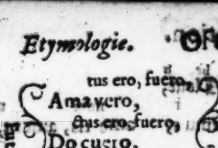
ris, rit. Plu. rĭmus, ĭtis, rint.

Praeterplup.

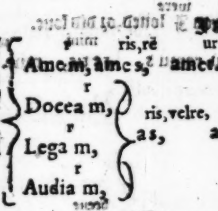
tus essem, fuissem,
Ama vissem,
ctus essem, fuissem,
Do cuissem,
ctus essem, fuissem,
Le gissem,
tus essem, fuissem,
Audi vissem,

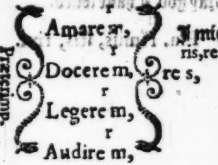
would god I had loued.

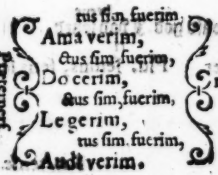
ses, set. Plu. semus, setis sent.




## Potentiall Moode præsent tense Singular.



Preterperfect.

tus essem, fuissem,
Ama vissem,
ctus, essem, fuissem,
Do quissem,
ctus. essem, fuissem,
Le gissem,
tus essem, fuissem
Audi vissem.

I might, would, should, or ought to haue loued
ri,
Ses, set. Plu. semus, setis sent.

Plu. perfe.

tus ero, fuero,
Ama vero,
ctus ero, fuero.
Do cuero,
ctus ero, fuero,
Le gero,
tus ero fuero,
Audi vero,

I may or can, loue, hereafter.
ris, rit. Plu. rimus, ritis, rint.

Subjunctiue Moode præsent tense singular, Cùm

when I loue,

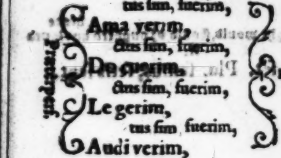
Ame m, ame s, amet, Plu. emus, etis, ent,
Docea m, Lega m, Audia m, } ris re, ur r mini ur
as, at, Plu. amus, atis, ant,

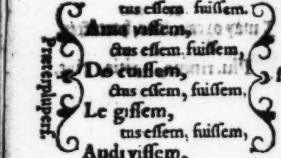
Preterimperf.

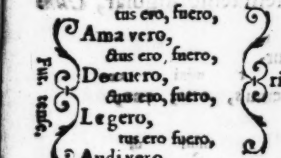
Amare m,
Docea m,
Legere m,
Audire m,

was
when I loued, or did loue.
ris, re ur r mini ur
res, ret. Plu. remus, re tis, rent,

Preterper




## Of the Verbe Infinite.

The verbe Infinite, is not determinate by number, & person.

It is absolute, or participiall.

The Infinitiue absolute hath a double termination, re, at the present tense, and preterimperfect tense, and isse of the preterperfect, and preterpluperfect tense.

Præsent,

## Of the participle Substantiue.

A Verbe Participle hath certaine properties of a noume, but the signification of a Verbe.
It is a participle Substantiue, or a participle Adiective.
The participle Substantiue, is a gerund, or a Supine.

## Of the Gerund.

The Gerund hath three terminations, di, do, dum, whereof di, and do, are of the present tense, and preter tense, and dum is of the Future tense, with a certaine instant motion. And they signifie most commonly, actively, and sometimes passively. as.

| being loued. | | being loued. | | be loued. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Amandi, | of louing. | Amando | in louing. | Amandum to loue. |
| Docédi, | of teaching | Docédo, | in teaching | Docendũ, to teach. |
| Legédi, | of reading | Legédo, | in reading. | Legẽdum, to read. |
| Audiẽdi, | of hearing, | Audiẽdo | in hearing. | Audiendũ. to heare. |

## Of the Supine.

The Supine hath two terminations; the one in um, the other in u.
The Supine in um, is of the Future tense, with a certaine instant motion, and signifieth actively: as.

Fut.

Fut. tens. { Amatum, to loue / Doctum, to teach / Lectum, to reade / Auditum, to heare } This Supine is sometimes expressed by the Verbe ire, an actiue, and iri, a passiue: as.

Amatū ire, to loue, / Doctū ire, to teach / Lectū ire, to read, / Auditū ire, to heare } here after

Amatū iri, to be loued, / Doctū, iri, to be taught / Lectū iri, to be read, / Auditū iri, to be heard, } here after

The Supine in u, is of the present tense, and preter tense, and signifieth passiue: as,

Amatu, to be loued. / Doctu, to be taught. / Lectu, to be read. / Audiu, to be heard.

## Of the participle Adiectiue.

The Participle Adiectiue, is Gerundiue, or Gerundiall.

The Gerundiue, is derined of the Gerund. There be two Gerundiues, one of the present tense; and another of the Future tense.

The Gerundiue of the present tense hath his latine ending in ans, or in ens, and his english in ing, and it signifieth actiuely: as.

Pres. tens. { Amans, louing. / Docens teaching / Legens, reading. / Audiens hearing. } Impersonalls haue no participles, except prænitens, decēs, libēs, pertæsus, prænitēdus, pudēdus.

A Gerund of the Future tense hath his latine ending in andus, or endus, and signifieth possiuely: as.

Fut.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Future | Amandus, Docendus, Legendus, Audiendus | to be | Loued, Taught, Read, Heard. | hereafter. |

The third sort of Neuters, hauing the third person plurall, haue this tense: as, aranda terra.

This Gerundiue is vsed absolutely with esse: as.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Future | Amandum esse, Docendum esse, Legendum esse, Audiendum esse | to be | loued, taught, read, heard. | hereafter |

## Of the Supinall.

The Supinall is made of the Supine. There be two Supinals: one of the Future tense, another of the Preter tense.

A Supinall of the Future tense hath his Latine ending in rus, and signifieth actiuely, like his Supine: as.

| | |
|---|---|
| Future tense. | Amaturus, to loue, or about to loue. |
| | Docturus, to teach, or about to teach. |
| | Lecturus, to reade, or about to reade. |
| | Auditurus, to heare, or about to heare. |

It is vsed also absolutely with esse: as,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Future tense. | Amaturum esse, | To loue, | hereafter. |
| | Docturum esse, | To teach, | |
| | Lecturum esse, | To read, | |
| | Auditurum esse, | To heare, | |

The Supinall of the Preter tense, hath his latine ending in tus, sus, xus: as, amatus, visus, nexus: & his englith in d, t, n: as, loued, taught, slaine. But one endeth in uus: as, mortuus. Example

Pre-

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Præt. tense. | Amatus, | Loued. | The third kind of Nenters aforesaid haue this tense: as arata terra. |
| | Doctus, | Taught. | |
| | Lectus, | Read. | |
| | Auditus, | Heard. | |

It is vsed absolutely with esse, and fuisse: as,

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Amatum esse, vel fuisse, | to haue, or had beene, | loued. |
| Doctum esse, vel fuisse, | | taught. |
| Lectum esse, vel fuisse, | | read. |
| Auditum esse, vel fuisse, | | heard. |

## Anomalie of Coniugation.

These Seauen Verbes following, possum, volo, nolo, malo, edo, fio, fero with his passiue feror, doe not altogether follow the rule of coniugation, which are thus declined.

Of potis and sum.

POssum, potes, potui, posse, potens. To may or can.

Of non, and volo.

Volo, vis, volui, velle: volendi, volendo, volendum: supinis caret, volens. To wil or to be willing.

Of magis, and volo.

Nolo, non vis, nolui, nolle: nolendi, nolendo, nolendum: supinis caret, nolens. To nill or to be vnwilling.

Malo, mauis, malui, malle: malendi, malendo, malendum: supinis caret, malens. To haue rather, or to be more willing.

Edo, edis vel es, edi, edere vel esse: edendi, edendo, edendum: esum, esu, vel estum, estu: edens, esurus vel esturus. To eare.

Fio, fis, factus sum vel fui, fieri: factus, faciendus. To be made, or done.

Fero, fers, tuli, ferre: ferendi, ferendo, ferendum: latum, latu: ferens, laturus. To beare or suffer.

Feror, ferris vel ferre, latus sum vel fui, ferri: latus, ferendus. To be borne or suffered.

Indicatiu

## Indicatiue Moode.

Pluraliter.

| | |
|---|---|
| POssũ, potes, potest. | Possum', potestis, possũt |
| Volo, vis, vult. | Volumus, vultis, volunt. |
| Nolo, non vis, non vult. | Nolumus, non vultis, nolunt. |
| Malo, mauis, mauult. | Malumus, mauultis, malunt. |
| Edo, edis vel es, edit vel est. | Edimus, editis vel estis, edunt. |
| Fio, fis, fit. | Fimus, fitis, fiunt. |
| Fero, fers, fert. | Ferimus, fertis, ferunt. |
| Feror, ferris, vel re, fertur. | Ferimur, ferimini, feruntur. |

Preterimp. sing.

Poteram, Volebam, Nolebam, Malebam, Edebam, Fiebam, Ferebam, as, at. Pluraliter, amus, atis, ant.

Ferebar, baris vel bare, batur. Plur. bamur, bamini, bantur.

Praeterpers.

Potui, Volui, Nolui, Malui, Edi, Tuli, isti, it. P. imus, istis, ẽrunt vel ẽre.

Factus, Latus sum vel fui, &c.

Praeterplu.

Potuerã, Voluerã, Noluerã, Maluerã, Ederam, Tuleram ras, rat. P. ramus, ratis, rant.

Factus, Latus eram vel fueram, &c.

Potero

Potero, poteris, poterit. Plura. erimus, eritis, erint
Volam, Nolam, Malam, } Edam, Fiam, Feram, } es, et. Plural. emus, etis, ent.
Ferar, ferêris, vel rê. Plu. ferêmur, remini, rentur.

Possum, Volo, Malo, want the Imperatiue moode.

## Imperatiue Moode.

Præs. tense Sing.

Noli, nolito. Pluralifer, nolite, nolitote
Es, esto, ede, edito } edat, esto, edito } P. Edamus, } edite, este, estote, editote. } edant, edunto.
Fito tu, } Fiat, fito, } Pl. Fiamus } Fite, fitote, } Fiant, fiunto
Fer, ferto, } Ferat, ferto, } P. feramus, } ferte, fertote } Ferant, ferunto
Ferre, fertor, } Feratur, fertor, } p. feramur } Ferimini, feriminor } ferantur, feruntor

## Optatiue moode *Vtinam*.

Præsent tense.

Possim, Velim, } Nolim, Malim, } is, it. Plu. īmus, ītis, int.
Edam, Fiam, Feram, } as, at. Plu. amus, atis, ant.
Ferar, raris vel rare, ratur. Plu. ramur, ramini, rantur.

Præterim.

Possem, Vellem, Nollem, Mallem, } Ederem, vel essem, Fierem, Ferrem, } es, et. P. emus, etis, ent.
Ferrer, rêris vel rêre, rêtur. Plu. remur, remini, (rentur.

Preterpers.

Praeterperf.
- Potuerim, Voluerim, Noluerim, — Maluerim, Ederim, Tulerim, — ris, rit. Pl. rimus, ritis, rint.
- Factus, Latus — sim vel fuerim, &c.

Praeterplu.
- Potuissem, Voluissem, Noluissem — Maluissem, Edissem, Tulissem, — ses, set. P. semus, setis, sent
- Factus, Latus — essem vel fuissem, &c.

Fut. tense.
- Potuero, Voluero, Noluero — Maluero, Edero, Tulero, — ris, rit. Plu. rimus, ritis, rint.
- Factus, Latus — ero vel fuero, &c. And so of the Potentiall and Subiunctiue as aforesayde.

## Infinitiue moode.

Present tense.
- Posse, Velle, Nolle, Malle, edere vel esse, Ferre, — Praeterperfect and Praeterplu perfect tense. — Potuisse, Voluisse, Noluisse, Maluisse, Edisse, tulisse — Fu — Esurum, Laturum — esse,
- Fieri, Ferri — Factum esse vel fuisse, Latum esse vel fuisse

Future tense. — Factum iri, vel faciendum esse, Latum iri, vel ferendum esse.

## Of Formation.

Dmation, is whereby all the tenses of euerie moode, are formed of the second, or first person of the present tense of the Indicatiue moode.

### 1. Coniugation.

The present tense ama. is formed

- Imperatiue moode Ama, whereof are formed
  - Ama-bam, bar.
  - Ama-bo, bor.
  - Am-em, er.
  - Ama-rem, rer.
  - Ama-re, ri.
  - Ama-ndi / Ama-ndo } whereof, amans, by changing di into s.
  - Ama-ndum, whereof amandus, whereof amandum esse.
- Preterperf. tense by changing s, into vi, as amaui, whereof are formed
  - Amav-eram.
  - Amav-erim.
  - Amavi-ssem.
  - Amaui-ero.
  - Amavi-sse.
  - Ama-tum, whereof
    - Amatum { ire, iri.
    - Amaturus, whereof Amaturum esse.
  - Amatu, whereof amatus, and
    - amatus sum vel fui.
    - amatus eram, vel fueram
    - amatus sim vel fuerim.
    - amatus essem vel fuissem
    - amatus ero, vel fuero.
    - amatum esse, vel fuisse.

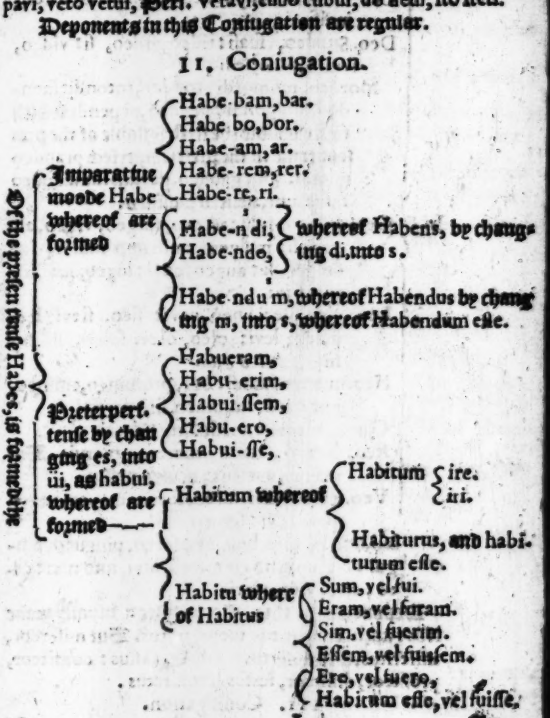
In the Preterperfect tense of this Coniugation sixteene verbes are irregular, namely.

Iuvo

Iuvo juvi, nexo nexui, seco secui, neco necui, and necavi, mico micui, and dimicavi, plico plicui, frico fricui, domo domui, tono tonui, sono sonui, crepo crepui, but increpavi, and discrepavi, veto vetui, Pers. vetavi, cubo cubui, do dedi, sto steti.

Deponents in this Conjugation are regular.

## II. Coniugation.



In the Preterperfect tenſe of this Coniugation many verbs are irregular.

In
- Beo. iubeo iuſſi: ſorbeo, ſorbui, and ſorpſi.
- Ceo. luceo, luxi: polluceo, polluxi: mulceo, mulſi.
- Deo. Suadeo, ſuaſi: rideo, ardeo, ſi: video, vidi: ſedeo, ſedi.
- Mordeo, momordi: tondeo, totondi: ſpondeo, ſpoſpondi: pendeo, pependi, which foure double the firſt ſyllable of the preſent tenſe in the preterimperfect. prandeo prandi: But gaudeo, gaviſus ſum: audeo auſus ſum, neutro paſſiues.
- Geo. fulgeo, fulſi: tergeo, turgeo, vrgeo, algeo, ſi: mulgeo, mulſi and mulxi: Indulgeo, ſi: augeo, auxi: lugeo, luxi, frigeo, frixi.
- Leo. pleo, plevi: neo, nevi: fleo, flevi: leo, deleo, levi: oleo, olevi ſoleo, ſolitus ſum, neutro paſſ.
- Neo. maneo, manſi: but, promineo, emineo, præmineo, immineo, ui.
- Queo. torqueo, torſi, liqueo, licui.
- Reo. hæreo, hæſi: mereo, merui: But mæreo, mæſtus, neutro paſſ.
- Veo. caveo, cavi, faveo, foveo, moveo, voveo paveo, vi: ferueo bui, and vi, of ferbeo, and fervo, pingueo, pinguei: Niveo, and conniveo, uivi, and nixi: ciceo: civi: vieo, vievi.

Deponents in this Coniugation vſually make tus: tus, liceor, licitus, tueor, tuitus. But miſereor, miſertus, and miſertus: fateor, faſſus: confiteor, profiteor, diffiteor, feſſus, reor, ratus.

Imperat. moode by changing o into e, whereof are formed

- Lege-bam, bar.
- Leg-am, ar. Fut tense.
- Lega-m, ar. præs. opt. pot. Sub.
- Lege-rem, rer.
- Lege-re, gi. ere, or e, into i.
- Lege-n di. } whereof legens, by
- Lege-ndo, } changing di into s.
- Lege-ndu m: whereof legendus; whereof legendum esse.

Of these last syllables of the present tense, are formed

- Bo, Co, Do, Go, Ho, Lo, Mo, No, Po, quo Ro, So, Sco, To, Vo, Cio, Dio, Gio, Pio, Rio, Tio, uo.

Præterper. by changing these last syllables into

- Bi, Ci, Di, Xi, Xi, üi, li, üi, mi Vi, ni, Psi, Qui, Vi, sivi, si Vi, Ti, Vi, Ci, Di, Gi, Pi, Ri, Ssi, üi.

whereof are formed

- Leg-eram. Leg-erim. Legi-ssem. Leg-ero. Legi-sse, & so of all the rest.
- Tum, ctum, Sum, ctum, ctum, itum, sum, itum, tum, tum, Ptum, Tum, Tum, tum, sum, tum, tum, tum, ctum, Sum, ctum, Tum, Sum, sum, itum, whereof comes us
  - um } i
  - urus, urum esse.
- Supines by changing these last syllables into
  - Sum, vel fui.
  - Erã, vel fuerã
  - Sim, vel fuerĩ
  - Essẽ, vel fuisse
  - Ero, vel fuero
  - um esse, vel fuisse.

Note.

The preterperfect tense of euery conjugation endeth in one of these terminations, Bi, Ci, Di, &c. whereof the supine is formed. Therefore to knowe the supines of any conjugation, looke here for the termination of the preterperfect tense, and it sheweth the supine ouer against it, vnlesse it be excepted, as hereafter followeth.

1. Anomalie of the Imperat. moode.

In the formation of the Imperatiue moode of this Conjugation, those Verbes that end in cio, dio, gio, pio, rio, tio, are irregular: for in the Imperat. moode they loose i: as, jacio, jace. In the Imperfect tense, they keepe it: as, faciebam: so in the future tense, and in the present tense of the Opt. pot. sub. imitating the fourth Conjugation.

11. Anomalie of the præterperfect tense.

Bo, Bi. Iambo, Iambi. But scribo, scripsi, nubo nupsi, cumbo, cubui.

Co, Ci vinco, vici. But parco, peperci, and parsi: dico dixi: duco, duxi.

Do, Di. mando, mandi. But scindo, scidi: fundo, fidi: fundo, fudi: tundo, tutudi: pendo, pependi: tendo, tetendo: pedo, pepēdi: cædo, cecidi: cædo, cecīdi. Cedo, cessi, to depart, or giue place. And these following change do, into si: as, vado, rado, Iædo, ludo, divido, trudo, claudo, plaudo, rodo. But fio, fisus sum, neutropassiue.

Go, xi. Iungo, iunxi. But go before r, is turned into si, spargo, sparsi: lego, legi: ago, egi: tan-

tango, tetigi: pungo, punxi, and pupugi: frango, fregi: pango pepigi, to bar: gaine: pegi, to ioyne: panxi, to sing.

Ho, xi. Traho, traxi: veho, vexi. Regular,

Lo, ui. Colo, colui. But psallo, psalli: fallo, falli: vello velli, vulsi: fallo, fefelli: cello, to breake, ceculi, pello, pepuli.

Mo, ui. Vomo, vomui. But, emo, emi: como, compsi: promo, prompsi: demo, dempsi: sumo, sumpsi: premo, pressi.

No, vi. Sino, sivi: But temno, tempsi: sterno, stravi: lino, lini, livi, levi, cerno, crevi: gigno, genui: pono, posui: cano, cecini.

Po, psi. Scalpo, scalpsi. But rumpo, rupui: stripo, stripui: cripo, crepui.

Quo, qui. linquo, liqui. But coquio, coxi.

Ro, vi. Sero, levi, to plant, or sow. But sero, serui, to approach too, or to lay in order: verro, verri, and versi: vro, vssi: gero, gessi: quæro, quæsivi: tero, trivi: curro, cucurri.

So, sivi. arcesso, arcessi, incesso, lacesso. But capesso, capessi, and capessivi: facesso, facessi: viso, visi: pinso, pinsui.

Sco, vi. pasco, pavi. But posco, popposci: disco, didici: quinisco, quexi.

To, ti. verto, ti. But sisto, stiti, to make to stand, sterto, stertui: meto, messui: flecto, flexi: pecto, pexui, pexi: necto, nexui, nexi: mitto, misi: peto, petij, perivi.

Vo, vi. volvo, vi. But vivo, vixi: nexo, nexui: texo, texui.

It hath the passe onely in compositi-on: as, efficior, &c. not facior, which is supplied by fio.

Cio, ci. facio, feci: jacio, jeci. But lacio, lexi: specio, spexi.

Dio, di. fodio, fodi. Gio, gi: as, fugio, fugi. Pio, pi: as, capio, cepi. Cupio, pivi: rapio, rapui: sapio,

pio, sapui, and sapivi.

Rio, Ri. Pario, peperi. Tio, ssi: ao, quatio, quassi.

üo, üi. statuo, statui. But pluo, plui, and pluvi: struo, struxi: fluo, fluxi.

DEpouents irregular. Labor, lapsus: gradior, gressus: patior, passus: apiscor, aptus: adipiscor, adeptus: amplector, amplexus: comminiscor, commentus: defatiscor, defessus: expergiscor, experrectus: irascor, iratus: nascor, natus: nanciscor, nactus: obliviscor, oblitus: paciscor, pactus: vlciscor, vltus: fungor, functus: loquor, locutus: sequor, secutus: quæror, quæstus: revertor, reversus: nitor, nisus, and nixus: vtor, vsus: fruor, fruitus, & fructus: whereof commeth fretus: ringor, rictus: orior, ortus: morior, mortuus: tuor, and tueor, tuitus.

## IIII. Coniugation.

Of the pres. tense Audi-s, to formed the

- Imperatiue moode Audi, whereof are formed
  - Audi-ebam, bar. But, ibam, quibam, of eo, and queo.
  - Audi-am, ar. But ibo, quibo.
  - Audi-am, ar. præs. opt. pot. sub.
  - Audi-rem, rer.
  - Audi-re, ri.
- Preterper. by changing s into vi, as, audivi.
  - Audi-endi, } whereof audiens.
  - Audi-endo, }
  - Audi-endum, whereof audiendus, & of that audiendum esse. But eundi, queundi, do, dum.
  - Audiv-eram.
  - Audiv-erim.
  - Audivi-ssem.
  - Audiv-ero.
  - Audivi-sse.

whereof

whereof are formed — Auditum, wherof { auditũ { ire. iri. Auditurus, & rum esse.

Auditu, whereof auditus and { Auditus sum, vel fui. Auditus erã, vel fuerã. Auditus sim, vel fuerim Auditus essẽ, vel fuissẽ. Auditus ero, vel fuero. Auditũ esse, vel fuisse.

In the preterperfect tense of this Coniugation, thirteene Verbes are commonly irregular. Venio, veni: cambio, campsi: raucio, rauci: farcio, farci: sarcio, sarci: sepio, sepsi: sentio, sensi: fulcio, fulsi: Haurio, hausi: sancio, sanxi: vincio, vinxi: salio, salui, to leape: amicio, amicui. These are seldome regular. But venio, neuer maketh venivi. Deponents Irreg. are, metior, mensus: orior, ortus.

Ordior, orsus, to begin: Operior, experior, competior, reperior, pertus.

## Of the Compound Preterperfect tense.

IN the Compound preterperf. tense, these are irregular.

I. Simple verbs, that * double the first syllable of the present tense, in the preterperf. tense: doe not so in the compound: as, tetendi, contendi. Cello ceculi, perculi, and perculsi. Except præcurro, excurro, repungo. And compounds of do, disco, sto, posco.

II. Plico, being compounded with Sub, or a noune, formeth plicavi: as, supplico, multiplico, duplico, triplico, &c. But applico, complico, replico, explico, ui, and avi. Lacio, elicui, infero, inserui, insẽvi.

III. Oleo, oliui formeth olêvi: as, exoleo, exolẽvi.

* Reduplication, or augment.

But

But adolevi, and adolui: redolevi, and redolui: obolevi, and obolui: ſubolevi, and ſubolui. All compounds of pungo, forme punxi: but, repungo, repunxi, and repupugi.

IIII. Compounds of do, of the third conjugation, make didi: as, addo, credo, edo, dedo, reddo, perdo, abdo, obdo, condo, indo, trado, vendo, and the compounds of ſto, make ſtiti.

## III. Anomalie of the Supine.

Bi, tum. Bibi, bibitum. reg.

Ci, ctum. feci, factum: jeci, jactum: ici, ictum, reg.

Di, Sum. vidi, viſum. But theſe double s. pandi, paſſum: ſedi, ſeſſum: ſcidi, ſciſſum: fidi, fiſſum: fodi, foſſum. Dedi, datum.

Note, that the doubled ſyllable of the preterperf. is not doubled in the ſupine: as, terendi, tenſum, and tentum.

Gi, ctum. Legi, lectum. But pegi, & pepigi, pactum, fregi, fractum: tetegi, tactum: egi, actum: pupugi, punctum: fugi, fugitum.

Li, Sum. Salli, ſalſum. Pepuli, pulſum: ceculi, culſum: fefelli, falſum: tuli, latum.

Mi, Ni. Pi, Qui. Tum: as, Emi, emptum: veni, ventum: cecini, cantum: capi, captum, of capio: but cæptum, of cæpio: rupi, ruptum, liqui, lictum.

Ri, Sum. Verri, verſum. But peperi, partum.

Si, Sum. Viſi, viſum. Some doubles: as, miſi, miſſum: (but fulſi, fultum: hauſi, hauſtum, ſarſi, ſartum: farſi, fartum.) And theſe alſo. vſſi, vſtum: geſſi, geſtum: torſi, tortum, & torſum: indulſi, indultum, and Indulſum.

Pſi, ptum.

Pſi, ptum. Scripſi, ſcriptum. But campſi campſum.

Ti, tum. ſteti, ſtatum, of ſto, ſtiti, ſtatum, of ſiſto. But verti, verſum.

Vi, tum. flavi, flatum. But pavi, paſtum: lavi, lotum, lautum, lauatum, potavi, potum, potatum: favi, fatum: cavi, cautum: ſevi ſatum livi, and lini, litum: ſolvi, ſolutum: volvi, volutum: ſingultiui ſingultum: vænivi, vænum: ſepelivi, ſepultum: adolevi, adultũ, ſob olavi, ſubolitum: but exolevi, exoletum.

üi, itum. Domui, domitum. But üi, of üo, foꝛmeth ũtum: as, ervi, erũtum. But rui, ruitum: ſecui, ſectum: necui, nectum: fricui, frictum: miſcui, miſtum amicui, amictum: torrui, toſtum: docui, doctum: tenui, tentum: conſului, conſultum: alui, altum alitum: ſalui ſaltum. colui, and occului, cultum: pinſui, piſtum: rapui, raptum: ſerui, ſertum: texui, textum.

But theſe change üi, into ſum cenſeo, cenſum: cellui celſum, meſſui, meſſum: nexui, nexum: pexui, pexum: patui, paſſum: carui, caſſum, and caritum.

Xi, ctum. Vinxi, vnictum but theſe fiue leaue out n, finxi, fictum, minxi, mictum: pinxi, pictum: ſtrinxi ſtrictum: rinxi, rictum flexi, flexum: plexi, plexum: fixi, fixum: fluxi, fluxum, polluxi polluctum.

## Of the Compounde Supine.

In the compound ſupine ſome verbes are irregular, Compounds of cunſum, make cuſum: of ruitum, rutum: of ſaltum, ſultum: of ſevi, ſatum, ſitum: Comedo, foꝛmeth comeſum, and comeſtum: but the reſt, eſum only: of noſco novi, cognitum, and agnitum: But others foꝛme notum: Noſcitum

is out of vſe.

Captum, factum, jactum, raptum, cantum, partum, ſparſum, carptum, fartum, change a, into e, as, conceptum, rejectum, perfectum concentum, &c.

## IIII. Anomalie of the Supinall in Rus.

These Supinalls, are irregularly formed of the Supine. Pariturus, of partum: naſciturus, of natum: ſonaturus, of ſonitum: arguiturus, of argutum: luiturus, of lutum: eruiturus, of erutum: noſciturus, of notum: moriturus, of the feigned ſupine mortuum: oriturus, of ortum: Oſurus, and futurus: ſecaturus of ſectum: affricaturus, refricarurus, of frictum, tonaturus, of tonitum: juvaturus, of jutum: and others of the firſt conjugation, whoſe ſupine ends in itum.

Heteroclytes, are redundant, or Defectiue.

## Redundance in the Prætertenſes.

Cæno, cænavi, cænatus ſum: juro, juravi, juratus, ſum: poto, potavi, potatus ſum, and, potus ſum: titubo, titubavi, titubatus ſum: carro, carui, caſſus ſum: prandeo, prandi, pranſus ſum: patuo, patui, paſſus ſum: placeo, placui, placitus ſum: Sueſco, ſuëvi, ſuetus ſum: væneo, venivi, venditus ſum: nubo, nupſi, nupta ſum: mereor meritus ſum, merui: And theſe Impersonalls; licet licuit licitum eſt: libet, libuit, libitum eſt: tædet, tæduit, pertæſum, eſt: pudet, puduit, puditum eſt: piget, piguit, pigitum eſt: miſeret, miſeritum, and miſertum eſt.

Redundance

## Redundance in supine.

LAvi, lotum, lautum, lavatum: necui, necatum, nectum: plicui, plicitum, plicatum: potavi, potum potatum: tonui, tonitum, tonatum: carui, cassum caritum: miscui, mistum, mixtum: Indulsi, indulsum, indultum: peperi, partum, partium. torsi, tersum, tortum: alui, altum, alitum: præstiti, præstitum præstatum: astitum, and astatum: tuitus sum tutum and tuitum.

## Defect in the Præterperfect tense.

SOme do borrow the Preterperfect tense of other verbes: and some haue no Preterperfect tense at all.

These borrow. A derivative in sco vsed for the primitive, hath the preter tense of the same: as revisco, revixi, of vivo: so pertimesco, sciscо, adsciscо resciscо, consciscо. Sisto, statui and stiti, of statuo: tepesco, tepui, of tepeo: ferveſco, fervi, of servo: cerno vidi, of video: quatio, concussi, of concutio: ferio, percussi, of percutio: meio, minxi, of mingo fido, sedi, of sedeo: tollo, sustuli, of suffero: sum, fui, of fuo: fero, tuli, of tulo: furo, insanivi, of insanio: vescor, pastus sum, of pascor: medeor medicatus sum, of medicor: liquor, liquefactus sum, of liquefio: reminiscor, recordatus sum, of recordor.

## These haue no prætertense.

VErgo, ambigo, gliscо, fatiscо, hiscо, Polleo, nideo labo, labascо, vrgeor, liquet the impersonall.

All verbes in sco, derived of nounes, and therefore hauing no primitive to borrow a pretertense, as: as pueralco, sylvescо, fruticescо, sterilescо, ditescо,

tesco, vesperascit, albescit, &c. to these adde aveo, salveo, glabreo.

**Passiues, whose actiues want the supines: as,** metuor, timeor, &c.

**Desideratiues as** scripturio, iturio, micturio, cacaturio &c. **Except** esurio, cburio: Parturio, parturivi.

## Defect in the supine.

*a* dimicatum. *b* parsum. *c* dispescitum. *d* Discitum. *e* compescitum *f*, poscitum, *g*, listum. *h*, luctum.

**These Verbs haue no supine; or a supine vnusuall.** Lambo, *a* mico, rudo, scabo, *b* parco, *c* dispesco, *d* disco, quinisco, *e* compesco, *f* posco, dego, ango, fugo, lingo, mingo, satago, algeo, vrgeo, turgeo, psallo, volo nolo, malo, labo, tremo, trideo, stridio, flaveo, liveo, aveo, paveo, conniveo, ferveo, **compounds of** nuo: **as,** renuo, annuo **of** cado, **except** occasum, **and** recasum, so respuo, glinquo, *h* luo, metuo, cluo, frigeo calvo, sterto, timeo, sapio, luceo, arceo, **whose compounds make** ercitum. ingruo, **of** gruo.

**All Neuters of the second Conjugation in** ui. **Except** oleo, doleo, placeo, taceo, pareo, careo, noceo, pateo, latco, valeo, caleo. **And the most verbs of this conjugation are neuters.**

## Generall Defectiues.

Ovæ. Dejeco, pejero. inquam. memento. fuxo. forem. quæso. ausim, aio. salve. cedo. insit.

OVat, ovans, ovandi, dejero, pejero. Inquio, *a* inquam; inquis, inquit, inquiunt. Inquisti, inquies, inquit, inque. inquito, inquiens, memento, mementote. Faxo, faxis, faxit, faxumus, faxitis, faxint, for faciam, or fecero, forem, fores, foret, forent, fore. Quæso, quæsumus. Ausim, ausis, ausit, ausimus, ausitis, ausint. Aiebam, aiebas, aiebamus, batis, bant. Aias, aiat, aiamus, aiatis, aiant, aiens. Salvebis, salve, salvero, salvete, salvento. cedo, cedite, **to tell, or to reach.** Insit, he saith,

hath layd. Odi, cæpi, memini, novi, haue all the tenſes formed of them: and they haue alſo the ſignification of the preſent tenſe: as, memini, I doe remember. odi. cæpi. memini. novi.

## Of Impersonalls.

Impersonalls, are declined in the voice of the third perſon ſingular, onely, whether actiue, or paſſiue. And there is almoſt no perſonall but it may be made an impersonall; as alſo no impersonalls, but they may be made Perſonalls: Except, pudet, pœnitet, oportet, libit, licet, liquet, docet, tædet, Piget: yet there is, pudeo, oportent, and oportebant, libent, licent, liquæo, decco, tædeo, pigeo, but vnuſuall.

Significatiue words are expounded: Explanatiues follow.

## Of Explanatiues.

An Explanatiue word, is, whoſe ſignification ſerueth to explaine the ſignificatiue: and it explaineth either ſingle words, whether nounes, or verbs or ſentences.

### The Explanatiue of Nounes is caled a Præpoſition.

A Præpoſition is a part of ſpeech, which being ſet before other parts doth fulfill, change, or deminiſh the ſignification thereof.

It is ſet before other parts in compoſition: But peculiarly, before the Caſe of a noune, in appoſition, as ad, patrem,

trem. In regard whereof it properly called a Præ-position: for otherwise being set alone, it goeth into the nature of an aduerbe.

Of prepositions, some are alwayes in compositi-on, namely these fiue, am, di, dis, re, se con: as, am-bio, diduco, distrabo, recipio, sepono, condono. Some alwaies in apposition: as apud, citra, erga, pone, secundum, circiter secus, versus, penes, co-ram, palam, sine, absque, prope, tenus. The rest are indifferent.

In regard of their case or casuall word: Some are set before the accusatiue: Some before the abla-tiue: Some before both: Some after both. The misplacing of them is called Anastrophe.

Anastrophe.

1. These 32. are set before the Accusatiue.

Ad. { To: ad te ibam. For: ad nullas preces. About: ad ducentos. Towards: ad occasum solit. At: ad diem venit.

Apud. { At: apud forum. With: apud Pompejum. Of: apud majores factitato.

Cis-on this side: cis Tyberim.

Citra-without: citra muricen.

Circiter. About: circiter meridiem.

Extra. { Without: extra muros. Besides: extra vnam ancillam.

Inter. { Betweene: inter os, and offam. In time of: inter cænam. and inter quietem. Among: inter ipsos.

Ob.

Ob. { For: ob Italiam.
Before: ob oculos.

Penes { In the power: me penes.
In: penes te culpa est.

Per. By, or through: Per Galliam.

Propter { For: propter te.
Nigh, beside: propter rivum.

Præter { Beside: præter vnum.
Against: præter spem, opinionem.
About: præter cæteros.
Beyond: præter hominem.
Before: præter oculos.

Post. { After, behind: post carecta.
post tempus.

Intra. Within: intra suam fortunam.

Secundum. { Beside, or nigh to: secundum aquam.
After: secundum deum parentes sunt honorandi.
For: secundū causam nostram disputant.
In: secundum quietem.
Upon: secundum ea deliberant.
According: secundum Pythagoras.

Supra. { Above: supra caput.
Beyond: supra morem.

Ante. Before: ante calendas.

Adversus Aduersum. { Against, towards: Id gratum aduersum te fuisse gaudeo.
Over, against: adversum Antipolim.

Circum, Circa. { About.

Contra. Against.

Erga. Towardes.

Infra. Beneath.

Iuxta. Beside, or nigh to.

Pone. Behinde.

Prope. Nigh.
Trans. On the further ſide.
Vltra. Beyond.
Vſque. Vntill, euen to.
Secus. By.
Verſus. Towards.

## II. Theſe 15. are ſet before the Ablatiue caſe.

A, Ab, Abs.

Of, from: a te accepi.
Of, or out: a gente Auguſti, of Ceaſars race.
For: a ſenatu ſtare. i. a parte ſenatus.
Againſt: defendo a frigore myrtos.
Beſide, or againſt: non abs re eſt.
Touching: ab animo æger, a me pudica eſt.
Towardes: a ſole, a terra.
At, with: ab eo grauam inibo.
Becauſe of, for: a metu infamiæ, vexa. ab amore ſcribere.

Conuerſant, or exerciſed about: a pocul.
A poculis eſt illi, his Cup-bearer.
A commentarijs, a chronicler.
A libellis, the maiſter of Requeſts.
A memoria, a Recorder.
A rationibus, an Auditour.
A ſecretis, a ſecretarie.
Ab epiſtolis, a ſcribe or clerke.
A pedibus, a Lackey.

A, is ſet before Conſonants. Abs before q, & t: abs quivis, abs te. Ab moſt often before a vowell: and ſometimes a Conſonant: as, haud ab re eſt, tis not in vaine.

Of: Cæſar ſcripſit de grammatica.
For, from. Diſce id de me.
For, or becauſe of: amas nos de fidicina iſtac.
According, after: de more. De ſententia tua.
By in; De nocte vigilare.
As touching, concerning: De cæteris rebus.
After: De media nocte miſſus.

E. EX.

Of: ex auro. matter.
After, from: ex illo tempore. time.
According to, for ex dignitate, ex vſu, e repub. ex ſententia, ex pacto.
Of, in: e rebus laborat.
Out, of, in: e vinclis cauſam dicere.
Of, or by: gradiva eſt è pamphilo.
On, from: &c. è contrario, contrariwiſe, e diverſo, on the other ſide: è facili, eaſily: e longiquo, farre of: e regione, over againſt.

Pro.

For, becauſe of: pro iſtis, dictis, & factis.
Before: religato pro foribus cane.
In regard of, according to: pro materia, pro re, pro tempore.
In: pro tribunali.
In defence of: ſtabat pro templo, pro Rabirio, Milone, &c.
In ſtead, or right: pro vxore habet, pro nihilo habeo, duco &c. i. quaſi.

Præ.

Before: præ me ferò.
For, by reaſon of: præ amore, luxuria.
In comparison: præ illo ſordes.

Cum: With.

Coram: before, or in preſence, coram te.

Clam: privily, vnknowne to: clam te eſt, clam

patrem.

Sine, Absque, } without: sine Cerere, & libero friget venus.

Palam: openly.

Tenus: until, or vp to: Capulo tenus. Barba tenus philosophus. But if the casuall word be the plurall number, it shall be the genitiue case also: as, aurium tenus, vp to the eares: genuum tenus, vp to the knees. Pectoribus tenus, vp to the breast.

## III. These 4. are set before both Cases.

In { Acc. { Towards in me benignus fuit. / Against: in te. In verrem. / To: hæc via ducit in vrbem. / Into: in partes ambas, in cineres. } Abl. { In: in te spes est. } } Some adde to these, procul as, Tac. procul cæde plin. procul Neapolim. procul muros.

Sub. { Accus. { To: sub vmbram properemus. / By: sub id tempus missus est. / Before: sub noctem, a little before night. i. ante. } Ablat. { Under: sub terra. / In. sub nocte silenti. / Before: sub judice lis est. i. coram. } }

Super. { Ablat. { Of: as, super ea re. i. de ea re. / Upon: fronde super viridi, otherwise an accusatiue. }

Subter. It is set before the accusatiue, and ablatiue in the same signification: subter terram, subter aquis.

## IIII. These 4. are set before, or after.

Cum, Tenus } as { quibuscum. / Pube tenus } { versus / vique } as { Angliam versus. / Ad occidentem vsque.

## Of Comparison.

Comparison befalleth certaine prepositions: as,

Citrà,

Citrà, citerior, citimus.
Intrà, interior, intimus.
Vltrà, vlterior, vltimus.
Ante, anterior.
Extrà, exterior, extimus, extremus.
Suprà, superior, supremus, summus.
Post, posterior, postremus.
Prope, propior, proximus. Ouid hath proximior.

## Of an Aduerbe.

AN Aduerbe is a part of speach, which serueth to explaine, & perfect the signification of the verbe. Sometime it explaineth a Noune: as, egregiè impudens. Parum philosophus. Sometime it explaineth it selfe: as, parùm honestè legens.

## Of the Accidents.

Fiue thinges belong vnto an aduerbes Signification, Kinde, figure, comparison, order.

The significations of aduerbes are gathered from the circumstances of verbes.

## Of Adverbes some signifie

1. In a place. { hic, illic, istic, intùs, foris, vsquam, vtrobique, vbilibet, alibi, necubi, etc.

2. To a place. { Hùc, illùc, istùc, forâs, horsum, alibi orsum, dextrorsum, sinistrorsum, antrum, deorsum, quoquoversum.

3. Frõ a place { Hinc, illinc, istinc, aliunde, vndelibet, cælitùs, diuinitùs, funditùs, vsque.

4. By a place. { Hâc, illâc, istâc, eâ, aliquâ, liquâ, nequâ, quâ, quaquâ, where via, is vnderstood.

5. Time. Hodie, cras, nuper, heri, olim, quando, aliquando, quamdudum, quāprimùm, quovsq; pridie, postridie, nudiustertius, nudiusquartus, &c. in dies, in horas, cum, tum.

6. Number. — Semel, bis, orduis, ter, quater, iterum.

7. Order — Inde deinde, hinc, novissimo, inprimis jampridem, adsummum.

8. Asking. — Cur, quare, quorsum, quamobrem, ecquid, quidita.

9. Calling — ô, heus, ehó, ehodum.

10. Denying. Haud, non, neutiquam, minimè, ne, nequaquam.

11. Affirming. Etiam, sic, quid, ni, adeò, nimirum, planè, scilicet, licèt, estò, næ, quidem, equidem, &c.

12. Swearing. Hercle, mehercle, Pol, ædipol, castor, ecastor, medius fidius.

13. Exhorting. Agè, sodes, amabò, sultis, eia, agitè, agedum.

14. Forbidding. Non, haud, ne.

15. Wishing. ô, vtinam, si, ô si.

16. Excluding. Modò, dummodò, tantummodò, solummodò, duntaxat, &c.

17. Gathering. Simul, vnà, pariter, vniversim, non modò, non solùm.

18. Parting. Seorsim, sigillatim, gregatim, viritim, egregiè, oppidatim, vicatim, privatim, spenatim, ostiatim, bifariam, trifariam, omnifariam, plurifariam, &c.

19. Diuersitie. Aliter, secus.

20. Choosing. Potiùs, potissimùm, imò, satiùs.

21. Intention, or increasing. Valdè, nimis, nimiùm, prorsus, impendiò, impensè, penitùs, funditùs radicitùs, omninò.

22. Re-

22. Releasing, or abating. { Vix, ægrè, paulatim, sensim, pedetentim.
23. Granting. Licet, estò, demùs sit, ità, sit sanè.
24. Qualitie. All that end in lie, or like: as, learnedly, princelike.
25. Quantity. Parùm, minimùm, summum, ad summum, magis, maxime.
26 Cōparison. { Non, solùm, sed etiam, nedum, tam, quàm, magis, minùs, maxime, minimè, ægrè.
27. Of a thing not finished. { Fermè, ferè, propè, vix, propemodum, tantum, tantum non.
28 Shewing. En, ecce, sic, hoc, modo, hoc pacto.
29. Explication. Id est, hoc est, quasi dicas, putà, vtpote.
30. Doubting. Forsan, forsitan, fortassis, fortasse.
31. Chance. — Fortè, fortuitò, casu, forte fortunâ.
32. Likenesse. — Sic, sicut, item, sicuti, itidem, quasi, tanquam, ceû, vti veluti.

## Of Kinde.

KInde is twofolde. Primitiue. Whereof there be very few: as, cras, olim, cùm, heri, vix, &c.
Derivatiue, is derived from other parts.

## Of the Derivatiue.

ADverbes are derived from some case of a noune, or from a verbe.
They are made of a noune three wayes.

1. By Imposition of the Accent.

1. These are made of the Nominatiue case: Castor, ecastor, pol, ædepol, &c. So nudiustertiùs, nudiusquartus, nudiusquartùs, nudiusquintùs, nudiussextùs, i. Now tis the third day since, &c.

Likewise many other words, ecquid, nunquid, quantùm, vtrùm, facilè, malùm, nimium, recens, torum, æternum, Imitating the Greekes. So hîc, illîc, hûc, illûc, &c. and comparatiues in us: as, doctius, melius, &c. But magis, of mage.

2. Of the Genetiue: as impræsentiarum,

3 Of the Datiue, as, tempori, loci, vesperi.

4 Of the Accusatiue: alias, ætatem, in diem & dies in horam, & horas.

5 Of the Ablatiue: modo, quo modo, quo pacto, quâ gratiâ, initiò, vespere, oppido, more, herclè, casû, forte fortunâ, ingratijs, gratis, Do, necessariò, mutuò, sedulò, raro, &c. to which locus & via, are vnderstood pridie, postridie, &c i, priore die, &c.

## II. By appolition of Syllables.

1. To the Nominatiue case: quories, aliquoties, toties, bis, or duis, quater, quinquies, and all adverbes of number though something irregularlie. Bifariam, trifariam, quadrifariam, quinquefariam, Septifariam, multifariam, aliquotfariam, omnifariâ.

2. To the Genitiue: divinitùs, humanitùs, publicitus, humaniter, firmiter, largiter, naviter, ignaviter, &c which are rather made of the Ablatiue.

3. To the Ablatiue: summâtim, centuriatim, tributim, viritim, cælim, punctim, sensim, strictim, tantim, &c. so, acriter fortiter, sublimiter, fœliciter, difficulter audacter contracte, pariter, aliter, omnino by adding no, &c.

## III. By changing of letters.

1. These are made of the Nominatiue case, by changing ans, and ens, into ter: as, prudenter, sapienter, latenter, libenter, recenter, decenter, amanter, diligenter, to which adde, violenter, luculenter of violentus, luculentus &c.

2. These are made of the Ablatiue, by changing

o, into e: as doctè, peritè, publicè, luculentè, largè bene, diuinè, sedule, &c.

11. Some are made of verbes: as, agè, sodes, i, si audes, or sodalis es: amabò, agite, licet, esto, demùs, putà, vtputà, scilicet, i, scire licet: illicet, i, ire licet, sultis, i, si vultis, sis, i, si vis, apage sis, ἀπαγὲ si vis Adesdum, quasi dicas, &c.

## Of Figure.

Of Adverbs, some are simple, as, prudenter: some compound: as imprudenter, so nequâ, quoquoversum, pridie, nudiustertius &c. i, dies tertius.

## Of Comparison.

Certaine adverbs are compared: pridem, prior, primus: pœnè penissimus: nuper, nupertimus: Diu diutior, diutissimus, satis, satior: Sæpè sæpius, sæpissimè: Benè, meliùs, optimè: malè, pejus, pessimè: magnùm, or magnò, magis, or mage, maximè parùm, minùs, minimè: And all that are dirived or compared Adiectiues: as, doctè, doctiùs, doctissimè: fortiter, fortiùs, fortissimè: propè, propiùs, proximè, with other compared prepositions.

## Of Order.

The Adverbe of denying is alwayes placed before the verbe: as non est cuiuslibet appellare Corinthum.

Adverbes signifying relation, are placed after, as other relatiues are: as, tam bonus, quàm diues.

The Adverbe of forbidding is placed before: as ne sævi magne sacerdos. But most Adverbes are placed indifferently.

## Of a Coniunction.

The Explanatiues of single words are expounded: explanatiue of sentences followeth, It is a coniunction, or an Interiection.

Coniunction is a part of speech whereunto the parts of an Oration being manifold, are ioyned togeather: or whereby the dependence of clauses among themselues is explained, and declared.

It is Enunciatiue, or ratiocinatiue.

Enunciatiue is, whereby the parts of an Enunciation are ioyned: and it is partly congregatiue, and partly segregatiue.

Congregatiue is, whereby the parts being as it were true at the same time, are ioyned togeather and tis either Copulatiue, or Connexiue.

1. Copulatiue is, wherewith the parts are coopled absolutely: as, ac, etiam, item, que, quoque, atque, itemque, nec, neque, neu, neue, cum, & tum, præterea, hoc amplius, his amplius for præterea. Simul, for et, or etiam. Some do adde these also Quinetiam, sed et, superque, insuper, ad hoc, ad hæc, &c.

2. Connexiue, whereby the consequent, or that which followeth, is coopled upon condition of the Antecedent, or that which went before: as, si, sin, modo, dum, dummodo, ni, nisi.

Segregatiue, is whereby the parts of an enunciation, as being not true at the same time, are seperated and it is Discretiue or disiunctiue.

3. Discretiue is, whereby the parts are onely seperated in reason: as, autem, ast, at, interea, interim, vt, vero, verum, nunc, tamen, etsi, tametsi, quanquam, quamvis, extraquàm, præterquàm, quin, alioquin.

4 Disiunctiue is, whereby the parts themselues, are so seperated, as if onely one of them could be true:

tiue; as, aut, an, sive, vel, ve, secus.

Raciocinatiue, whereby one part of reasoning is as it were proued by the other: and it is called causall, or rationall.

5. Causall is, whereby the cause of the Antecedent is rendered: as, enimvero, etenim, siquidem, quoniam, quia, nam, namque, vt cum, quando for quoniam quia, quippe, quod, vtpote, siquidem, quandoquidem, propterea quòd. These not onely notes of the Cause, but generally of any argument.

6. Rationall is, wherewith the Consequent is concluded of that which went before: as, ergò, ita, itaque, ideo, igitur, quare, quamobrem, quas ob res, quapropter, quocirca.

## Of Polysyndeton.

The Anomalie of Coniunctions is twofold { Polisyndeton, Assyndeton.

Polysyndeton, is the redundance, or ioyning together of many Coniunctions superfluously: as et copiose, et graviter the former redoundeth, signifying both the later, and also Amplectitur cum eruditos omnes, tum inprimis Marcellum.

Aut bibat, aut abeat, aut redoundeth signifying either, the later or else. Sive ista vxor, siue amica sit. cic Etsi, quamvis non fueris suasor, & impulsor profectionis meæ &c.

But more especially superfluous are Expletiues which notwithstanding haue their vse: as, quidem equidem, nimirum, cuim vero &c. Ter, At enim non sinam.

## Of Asyndeton, or Dialyton.

Asyndeton, is the defect, or taking away of ẏ coniunctiõ: as cic. Abijt, excessit, euasit, erupit. Here the Copulatiue is wanting, Tu cum principem Senatorem,

torem domi habeas, ad eum nihil refers, ad eos refers, qui suam domum nullam habent, tuam exhauriunt. The discretiues quidem, & autem, are wanting. Consilium primò capit stultum, veruntamen clemens. Et si is wanting. Ter, Memini, tamet si nullus moneas tamen is wanting. Cic. velit, nolit difficile est, the disiunctiue is wanting. & quod, after volo, nolo, malo, precor, rogo, &c.

The Causalls, vt are often vnderstood: as, nolim ita existimes, likewise the verbe volo, cōming before vt, is concealed with it, cic. Ad me de omnibus rebus quam sæpissimè literas mittas. So ne after caveo, as cave facias, &c.

## Of Figure.

The Accidents of a Coniunction are figure, and order. Some Coniunctions, are simple: as, aut, vt, et, si, que, &c. some are compound: as itemque neque, &c. But they that are ioyned to the end of a word, are called enclytikes, viz, que, ne, ve, dum, sis, nam, as, Atha masque, herusue, tantæne, adesdū, &c.

## Of Order.

In regard of order, some are placed before, some after, some indifferently.

These are placed before.

Verum, Verumetiam, sed, sed etiam, neque, nedum, Atque, ac, et nec, tum, quin, quinetiam, sin, at, astque.

Extraquam, imò, quòd, præter quàm, etenim, aut, non.

Quamvis, quas ob res, quamobrem, quocirca, igitur, nam, Cum, namque, quapropter, In vneuen Comparison making cum is placed before, because it signifies the lesse and tum after, because it signifies the more: as Amplectitur cum eruditos omnes,

tum

tum inprimis Marcellum. In euen compassion, tum is doubted.

These are placed after.

Tantùm, autem, ve, que, interà, interim, enim, quoque, verò.

These are placed indifferently.

Si, nisi, ni, aliquin, aliquî, licet, vt, tamen, vti, Itaque, eminverò, siquidem, ne, ergo, itaque, porrò.

## Of an Interjection.

An Interiection is a part of speech, which declareth the suddaine passion of the mind, vnder an vnperfect voice. Therebe so many significations hereof, as there be suddaine passions of the troubled minde.

Mirth: Euax, vah, hei, evohe, the notes of Bacchus his Priests.
Sorrowe, Heu, cheu, hoi, hei, ô, ah.
Dread, or feare hei, Atat.
Marvelling Papæ ὦ πόποι.
Shunning Apagè Apagésis, of ἀπὸ ἄγω si, vis
Praising Euge.
Calling: Eho, oh, io.
Disdaining: as, Hem, vah.
Scorning: as, Hui.
Exclamation: as, oh, proh, proh nefas:
Cursing: as, malûm, væ, malûm.
Laughing: as, Ha, ha, he.
Silence: as, au, st, et.

Moreouer

Moreover any word, or words breaking forth abruptly or suddainly, and from some troubled passion, is an Interiection: as, verg. Navibus infandùm amissis.

## Of Scheme, or Figure.

SCHEME, or Figure is the common affection of Etymologie, In regard whereof a word is said to be proper, or Schematicall or figuratiue.

There be foure Schemes, or Figures. Prothesis, Aphæresis, Tmêsis, Enallage, or Antimeria.

Prothesis, is the putting to of a letter, or syllable to the beginning, *b* middle, or *c* end of a word: as, gnatus, tetuli, for natus, tuli: relligio * caussa, Mavors, for religio, causa, Mars: Dicier, for dici.

*b* Epenthesis.
*c* Paragogie.
* veteres sæpe geminabãt ss.

Apheresis, is the taking away of a letter, or syllable from the beginning, *d* middle, or *e* end of a word: as, ruit, temnere, for cruit, contemnere: abijt, dixti, repostum, for abivit, dixisti, repositum: Ingeni, dixtin, for ingenij, dixistine. So sit, for siet, tibicen, for tibijcen.

*d* Syncope.
*e* Apocope.

Tmesis, is the division of one compound worde, one or more words being put betweene the parts. Ter. Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere. Idem. Thaïs maximo orabat operè. Ter. Omnia prius experiri, quàm armis sapientem decet.

## Enallage.

Enallage or Antimeria, is the immutation, or changing of letters, of the parts of speach, or of the kinds,

and accidents thereof.

## I. Enallage of Letters.

Optumus, Volgus. Paſſes, Arbos, &c.

Verg. olli ſubridens hominum ſator, atque deorum, for illi.

Ter. Mos gerundus eſt Thaidi, for gerendus.

## II. Enallage of one part for another.

1. The Subſtantiue is put for the adverbe. Verg. Nec vox hominem ſonat: ô dea certè, for humaniter. Iuv. Qui Curios ſimulent, & Bacchanalia vivunt, for Bacchanaliter.

2. The Adiectiue nullus, is put for non. Cic. Philotimus non modo nullus venit, ſed ne per literas quidem eorum fecit.

Ter. Etſi nullus dixeris, Etſi nullus moneas.

3. The Prepoſition is put for the noune. Verg. Neque enim ignari ſumus ante malorum, for priorum.

4. The Prepoſition for the Verbe. Nec fuga jam ſuper vlla, for ſupereſt. O mihi ſola mei ſuper Aſtianactis imago. But it is Helleniſmus.

5. The Adverbe for the Noune. Ter. Aliis, quia deeſt, quod ament, ægrè eſt, for ægrum eſt. So valdè eſt, partim virorum, for pars. E convivio ſurrexit cum partim illorum, for parte.

Amplius, plus, minus, are vſed for plura quàm, and minora quàm.

Plin. plus vicena ova incubanda ſubijci vetant, for plura quàm vicena. Liv. Hoſtium plùs mille cæſi, for plures quàm. Cic. Amplius quadraginta diebus manſit, for pluribus quàm quadraginta.

Liv. Amplius ſex millia hominum capta, for plures quàm ſex millia hominum capti. Millia, for mille, is

Enallage of Gender.

Cæſa millibus paſſuum minùs duobus caſtra poſuerunt,

suérunt, for a paucioribus passibus, quàm duob
millibus.

6. The Adverbe is put for the Pronoune. C
Differo in id tempus, cùm scieris, quid actum sit, I
in quo. Verg. Genus vnde latinum, for a quo. T
Digna res est, vbi nervos intendas tuos, for in qua

## III. Enallage of the kinds of each part

1. The Poets vse the proper name, for the poss
sive: Verg. Dardana suscitat arma, for Dardenia: b
tis Hellenismus.

2. A certaine number is put for an vncertaine ver
ò terque quaterque beati. Ter, may signifie the
faculties of the Soule (Understanding, Will, Me
morie) and quater the foure elements.

3. Plures is commonly vsed for multi.

4. The reciprocall pronounes sui, and suus, are pu
for the Relatiue.

Ter. Orat, si se ames, vt ad se venias, for illam. Ca
Si quid ille a se velit, illum ad se venire oportere.

Ovid. Respice Laërten, vt jam sua lumina condas.

5. The Demonstratiue, is put for the Possessiue.
Ter. Desiderio id fit tuo, for tui. Idem. Negligentia
& odio id fit tuo.

6. A verbe absolute, is put for the actiue. Verg.
Et mutata suos requierunt flumina cursus.

Ter. Omnes se foras proruunt. Verg. Spumas
salis ære ruebant.

7. The passiue is put for the actiue. Verg. Bellantur
Amazones armis. Idem. Expoliantur eos, for expo-
liant. Placidam nutritor olivam, for nutrito. Where-
by it seemeth that in ancient times they gaue to ever
ry actiue a medium, or common, imitating the
Greekes.

8. Many verbes, or participialles of the actiue,
vsed

boyce signifie passiuely, and many of the passiue actiuelie: as, evidens, i, apertè videtur. Gell, equo vehens, for vectus, Horrentia arma, for horrida. So contrarily, circumspectus, consideratus, &c.

9 In coniunctions, the copulatiue is put for the disiunctiue, verg.

Aut Pelago Danaum insidias, suspectaque dona.

Præcipitare jubet, subjectisque vrere flammis, for aut.

The Disiunctiue for the Copulatiue. Ter. vel mihi rex semperagebat gratias, for etiam.

The Copulatiue for the causall, verg. Audieras, & fama fuit, for nam. Cic. Non solùm nobis nati sumus, ortusque nostri partem sibi vendicat patriá, for enim. So ac, and atque, are put for quàm. Ter Neue aliorsum, atque ego feci, acceperit.

Si, for An Ter, estne intus, si sit, rogas: Hellenismus.

Nisi for sed Ter Nescio, nisi, mihi deos satis scio fuisse iratos &c. Hellenismus.

The deede, or thing done, is often vsed for the narration, or telling of it. Verg Pasiphaën solatur amore juvenci, i, canit, vel narrat Pasiphaën solari, &c. Idem.

Tum Phaëtondiadas musro circundat amaræ.

Corticis, atque solo proceras erigit alnos. i. canit vel narrat circundatas, & erectas.

## IIII. Enallage in the Accidents.

### 1. Of case.

1. The Nominatiue is put for the vocatiue. Verg. Proijce tela manu sanguis meus, for mi Idem.

Et quæ vos rara viridis tegit arbutus vmbra, for arbute.

Vos ô patricius sanguis, for patricie. It is Hellenismus also.

2. The vocatiue for the nominatiue. Pers, censoremque tuum vel quod trabeate salutas, for trabeatus macte virtute esto, macte ista voluntate, for mactus.

3. The Genetiue case of a proper name is put for

the Nominative: as, vrbs Antiochiæ, celsa Burrotí vrbs, Of a common: as, cius rei mihi venit in mentem, for id, or ea res.

4. The Dative for the Nominative. Liv. Scipio cui Africano fuit cognomen, for Africanus.

5. The Nominative for the Ablative, Hoc. Occurrunt animæ, quales neque candidiores terra tulit, for qualibus, But tis Helleniſimus

6. The Ablative with a prepoſition for the genetive. Ter. Ab eo gratiam hanc inibo, for eius, i, gratiam eius merebor. Idem. Ea primùm ab eo animadvertenda iniuria eſt. for eius injuria.

## 2. Of Nomber.

1. The Singular is put for the plurall. Ter. adeone homines ex amore immutarier, vt non cognoſcas eundem eſſe, for eoſdem.

Ovid. Noſtros vidiſti flentis occellos, for flentium.

2. The plurall for the ſingular Ter. Eunuchum dixti velle te, quia Solæ his vtuntur reginæ.

## 3. Of Gender.

The Neuter is put for the maſculine, or feminine. Ter. Ego quoque perco, quod mihi eſt charius, i, qui mihi ſum charior.

Verg. Dulce ſatis humor depulſis arbutus hædis, for dulcis.

## 4. Of Perſon.

Danai, qui parent Atridis, contra Priamum arma ſumite.

Ter. Si quis me quærit Rufus, præſtò eſt, for ſum.

## 5. Of Moode.

1. The Indicatiue, is put for the Potentiall. verg Et ſi non alium latè jactaret odorem, laurus erat, for eſſet. Cic. Dices, quid? quaſi iſtuc erat magnum, for eſſet.

2. The

1. The Future tense of the Indicative for the Imperative. Cic. Valebis, meaque negotia videbis &c. for vale, and vide.

3. The Imperative, for the Future tense of the Indicative.

Verg. Si fatura gregem suppleverit, aureus esto, for eris.

4. The Future tense of the Potentiall, for the Future tense of the Indicative: as, invenerit, acciderit, viderit, for invenict, accidet, videbit.

5. The Infinitive moode for ỹ preterimperf. of the Indicative. Ter. facile omnes perferre, ac pati, for perferebat ac patiebatur. Idem. Omnes mihi invidere, acmordere clanculùm, ego autem flocci pendere.

## 6 Of Tense.

1. The Present tense is vsed often for the Preterperfect tense in the relation of a thing done. Ter. Accedo ad pedissequus, for accessi.

Verg. Omnis humo fumat Neptunia Troja, for fumavit.

2. The Preterperfect tense, for the Preterpluperfect tense. Verg.

Ni mea cura resistat, jam flammæ tulerint, for tulissent. Liv.

Me quoque juvat, velut in parte laboris fuerim, for fuissem.

3. The Preterimperfect tense, for the Preterperf. Ter. Nam si esset vnde id fieret, faceremus, for fuisset and fecisemus.

4. The Present tense in the Infinitive, for the Future tense, Verg.

Progeniem sed enim Trojano a sanguine duci, for ducendum esse.

5. The Preterperfect tense, for the Future. Quint. Si tales omnes milites habemus, vicimus, for

vincemus.

6. The *Future* tense of the verbe is sometimes put with the supinall in Rus: as, Prop. Si quid doliturus eris.

Ovid. Mergite me fluctus, cum redituru ero.

The figure Hendiadis, may bee referred hither, which is, when the Substantiue is put for the Adiectiue with the coniunction copulatiue; or when the Adiectiue is changed into the Genetiue case of his Substantiue. Verg. Chalybem, frænosque momordit, for Chalibea fræna. Idem. Nec mihi displiceat maculis, insignis, et albo, for albis maculis. Idem. Molemque, & montes insuper altos, for molem altorum montium. Idem. Pateris libamus, & auro, for aureis pateris. Idem. Per famam, ac populum, for famosum populum.

Do, in partem, & prædam, for partem prædæ. In spiritu mansuetudinis, for spiritu mansueto.

## Of Syntaxis.

SYNTAXIS, or Construction is the second part of Grammar, that teacheth the true ioyning of words together.

It hath two partes, Concordance, and Regiment.

Concordance is, whereby every appolite agreeth with his suppolite.

Concordance is of Significatiues, or Explanatiues.

Concordance of Significatiues, is of a noune with a noune, or of a noune with a verbe.

The concordance of a noune with a noune, is of the Substantiue with the Adiective, or of the Antecedent with the Relatiue.

1. Concordance of the Substantiue & the Adiect.

The Substantiue is either true or feigned.

The true Substantiue is first a noune Substantiue.

2. An Adiective put absolutely in the Neuter gender.

3. Interrogatiues, Indefinites, and partitiues.

4. Pronoune Demonstratiues expressed, or vnderstood in the possessiue.

5. Pronoune Relatiues.

THE Adiective whether it be noune, pronoune, or participle, agreeth with his true Substantiue in their properties of case, gender, and number.

Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur.

Pulchra omnia sunt difficilia.

Quis bonus est? Ego laborans diuersis.

Diuitias amare noli, quod omniũ est sordidissimum. Ex eo ipsius animo conjecturam feceris.

## Allæôsis. i. Alteration.

The affections of this Concorde, are Allæosis, and Ellipsis.

Allæosis is, whereby they differ in these accidents according to voyce, but agree in sence or signification.

And it is eyther of them all seuerally, or of two togeither.

## Of Number.

Allæôsis of number is, First, when many Substantiues singular of one gender do agree to an Adiective plurall of the same: as, Ter.

Fidem, & taciturnitatem, quas in te intellexi satis.

Secondly, when an Adiective comming after many Substantiues singular of the masculine, and feminine, or neuter gender, agreeth to the masculine, or feminine, because the masculine is more worthie than the feminine, and the feminine than the neuter: as, Rex & Regina beati. Chalybs, & aurum sunt in fornace probati. Syllepsis.

Thirdly, when one number is put for another: as, Nostros vidisti flentis ocellos, for flentium.

## Of Case.

Allæôsis of Case is, when one case is put for an other: as, * Macte vir virtute esto, for mactus: as, mactus esto hoc sacrificio, Be thou increased in honour by this sacrifice * Magis aucte. Antiptôsis.

Salve primus omnium parens patriæ appellate, for prime.

## Of Gender.

Allæôsis of Gender is, when an Adiective coming betweene two Substantiues of diuers genders,

ders, and one person, agreeth with eyther of them, but elegantly with the latter: as,

Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda.

Gens vniversa venĕri Appellati.

## Of Number, and Gender.

Allæôsis of both number, and gender is, when an Adiectiue plurall of the masculine gender agreeth with a Substantiue of the plurall and masculine signification: as, Gens armati. Pars mersi tenuĕre ratem. Synthesis,

Verg, Hæc manus ob patriam pugnando vulnera passi.

Secondly, when many Substantiues singular of things not hauing life, agree with an Adiectiue of the neuter gender, though they be other genders: as, Arcus et calami sunt bona. Syllepsis,

Imperium, & dignitas, quæ petijsti.

## Ellipsis. i. Defect.

Ellipsis is the Concealement of the Substantiue, or Adiectiue, which agreeth to the Substantiue concealed or vnderstood.

## Of the Substantiue.

The Substantiue concealed is knowne 2. wayes.

First, it is knowne by the speach, or Substantiue aforegoing: as, Ter. Transtulit in Eunuchum suam. Comędiam is concealed. Synthesis,

Centauro in magna. Navi is vnderstoode.

Sermonem quem audistis, non est meus. Sermo is vnderstood.

Secondly, It is expressed in the whole aforegoing, and vnderstoode to the parts: as, Prolepsis,

Duæ aquilæ volaverunt, hæc ab oriente, illa ab occidente.

Populus, alij in divitijs, alij in penuria, vivit.

## Of the Adiective.

Zeugma. Ellipsis of the Adiective is, when many Substantiues come together with one Adiective expressed, which Adiective agreeth with the nigheſt Substantiue, whether it bee in the beginning, * middle, or * ende, and is vnderstood to the rest: as.

Prozozeugma. Meiozeugma Hypozeugma

Datum est sanum episcopis, non domus, non lectus.

Socijs, & regina receptis.

## The feigned Substantiue.

The feigned Substantiue is that, which supplieth the place of the true Substantiue: It is either some other word, some member of a sentence, or whole sentence: as,

Scire tuum nihil est, nisi te scire hoc sciat alter.

Audito regem Doroborniam proficisci.

Furtum committere, & furto assentiri æquo supplicio digna.

## 2 Concordance of the Antecedent, and Relatiue.

THe Antecedent is a word that most commonly goeth before the Relatiue, and is rehearsed againe of the Relatiue.

It is either true or feigned.

1. The true Antecedent is a Noune Substantiue.
2. An Adiective put absolutely in the neuter gender.
3. Interrogatiues, Indefinites, Partitiues.
4. Pronoune Demonstratiues expressed, or vnderstood in the possessiue.

Pronoune, or Noune indefinite.

1. The Relatiue agreeth with his true Antecedent alwayes in their Accidents of number, gender, and person:

person: as.

Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur.

Quæque pulchra sunt difficilia.

Non videmus manticæ, quod in tergo est. supple (id)

Ovid.—Ista decent humeros gestamina nostros.

Qui dare certa feræ, qui vulnera possumus hosti.

2. The Relative agreeth with his true Antecedent sometimes in case. In the case of the Relative are to be considered Relation, and Regiment.

Relation.

In regard of relation it agreeth with the Antecedent in case three ways.

1. When no Antecedent goes before as in question asking as, Quam excribis sententiam?

2. In the manner, when the relative signifieth indefinitely i, englished by (what) as, etc. Interrogatives and Indefinites agree with the word following: as Cæsar excellentibus ingenijs, qualem eum est, delectatur.

Forsitan quæratis, qui sit iste terror, & quæ tanta formido, quæ cæteros impediat. &c.

3. By Pleonasme, and that three waies.

2. When the Antecedent is twise repeated: as.

Duo erant itinera, quibus itineribus exire possunt.

3. More elegantly, when the Antecedent is understood in the speech before, and expressed with the case of the relative after: as, Ter. Antiptosis.

Populo vt placerent, quas fecisset fabulas.

Sermonem quem audistis, non est meus.

3. When the Antecedent is expressed with the case of the Relative before, and understood in the speech following: as.

Ter. Quæ res in se neque consilium, neque modum habent vllum, eam consilio regere non potes.

Regiment.

In regard of Regiment, the relative is put in the

the same case that the verbe requireth, where vnto hee is construed: as.

Felix, quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum.

## Allæôsis.

The affections of this Concord are Allæôsis, and Ellipsis.

Allæosis is of number and gender seuerally, or of both together.

### Of Number.

Allæôsis of number is two wayes.

First, when many Antecedents singular of one gender agree with the Relative plurall of the same: as, Ter. Fidem, & taciturnitatem, quas in te intellexi sitas.

Secondly, when a Relative plurall comming after many Antecedents singular of thinges hauing life of the masculine and feminine gender, agreeth to the masculine as the worthier: as, Illum, illamque, quos semper charos habui, ac me diligas.

Syllepsis.

### Of Gender.

Allæôsis of gender is, when a Relative comming betweene two Antecedents of diuers genders, agreeth with either of them: as, Homines mentur illum globum quæ terra dicitur, or qui terra dicitur.

### Of Number, and Gender.

Allæôsis of number and gender is, when many Antecedents singular signifying thinges without life, of what gender soeuer, haue a Relative plurall of the neuter: as, Arcus & calami, quæ fregisti.

## Ellipsis.

Anacolithon. Ellipsis is the a concealement of the Antecedent: as, Verg. Millia quot magnis nunquam venêre Mycenis.

Non

Non videmus manticæ, quod in tergo est.

## The feigned Antecedent.

The feigned Antecedent is that, which supplieth the place of the true Antecedent. It is either some one word, some one sentence, or clause aforegoing, or more: as, Credere, quod dei donum est, idem est, ac salvum fieri.

Intempore veni, quod omnium est primum.

Tu multùm dormis, & sæpè potas, quæ ambo sunt corpori inimica.

### Note.

Id quod, is elegantly used for quod, that is to say, when it emphatically recollecteth the speech aforegoing: as, Id, is so likewise used without quod: as, Ter. Sed eas latinas prius factas scisse se, id verò pernegat.

## 3. Concordance of the Nominatiue, and the Verbe.

The Nominatiue case is either true or feigned.

1. The true Nominatiue case is a noune Substantiue

2. An Aiectiue put absolutely in the neuter gender.

3. The Gerund in dum.

4. Interrogatiues, Indefinites, Partitiues.

5. Pronoune Primitiues, whether demonstratiues or Relatiues.

A verbe personall agreeth with his true Nominatiue case in number, and person: as,

Præceptor legit, vos verò negligitis.

Quis bonus est? Aperite aliquis ostium.

Abeundum est mihi.

Miser est, qui nummos admiratur.

## Allæôsis.

The affections of this Concord, are Allæôsis, and Ellipsis.

Allæôsis is of number onely.

## Of Number.

Allæôsis of number is foure wayes.

Synthesis. First, a Nominatiue case singular of the plurall signification, commonly called a noune of multitude, will agree to a verbe plurall: as, Quisque cæpere, turba ruunt.

Aperite aliquis ostium.

Secondly, many Nominatiue cases singular of one person, will agree to a verbe plurall of the same: as, Ira, et furor mentem præcipitant.

Thirdly, when a verbe commeth betweene two nominatiue cases of diuers numbers, and one person, the verbe will agree to either: as,

Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt.

Pectora percussit, pectus quoque robora fiunt.

Syllepsis. Fourthly, when seuerall persons singular come betwixt the verbe, it shall be the plurall number, and agree with the worthyer: as,

Neque ego, neque tu sapimus.

Ego, et suauissimus Cicero valemus.

Si tu, & Tullia lux vestra valetis.

Ego cum fratre sumus candidi.

## Ellipsis.

Ellipsis is of the Nominatiue, and the Verbe seperally, or of them both together.

## Of the Nominatiue Case.

First, the Nominatiue case of the first or second person, is most vsually concealed, except in vehement, or significant speaking: as, tibi aras, tibi occas, tibi seris.

Ouid.

Ouid. Tu dominus, tu vir, tu mihi frater eris.

Secondly, the Nominatiue case of the third person referred to men is most often concealed, as,

Ferunt, aiunt, ferunt, prædicant, &c.

## Of the Verbe.

The Verbe concealed is either once expressed in the same speach: or vnderstood by the context of a former speach.

The verbe concealed in the same speach is first expressed in the whole, and vnderstood to the parts, as, Duæ aquilæ volauerunt, hæc ab oriente, illa ab occidente. Prolepsis.

Secondly, when many Nominatiues come together, the verbe agreeth with the nighest, whether it be in the beginning, middle, or end, and is vnderstood to the rest: as, Zeugma.

Datur fanum episcopis, non domus, non lectus.
Iohannes fuit piscator, & Petrus,
Hic illius arma, hic currus fuit.
Ego, et tu studes.

The verbe to be vnderstood by the context of a former speach is concealed most often in a question asked: as, Egone illam? quæ illum? quæ me? quæ non? here are vnderstood, vlciscar, recepit, excluſit, admiſit. Verg. Quos ego: ſed motos præſtat componere fluctus. (puniam) is vnderstood.

Of both the Nominatiue, and the Verbe.

Ellipsis of them both is most vſuall in ſuch like ſpeaches. Hæc hactenus. Diximus is vnderstoode. Quid multa? Dicam is concealed: Ter.

Adeòne homines immutari ex amore, vt non cognoſcas eundem eſſe, poſſibile eſt, is concealed.

## Note.

Elliptical Concordance, and gouernment alſo, are

dre most vsuall in familiar, & passionate speeches, as in Comedies and Tragedies.

## The feigned Nominatiue Case.

The feigned Nominatiue Case supplyeth the place of the true Nominatiue case. It is either some one word, some member of a sentence, or whole sentence, or more.

Scire tuum nihil est, nisi te scire hoc sciat alter.
Partim virorum ceciderunt in bello.
Adde, quòd ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes,
Emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros.
Audire, credere, sequi christum, & verbum eius satis sunt ad beatam vitam.

# 2. Concordance of the Aduerbe.

The second Concordance is of Explanation, that is, of the Aduerbe, and the Commution.

The Aduerbe agreeth to a noune whether Substantiue, or Adiectiue, and to a Verbe.

## To a Substantiue.

Vbi. Vnde. These Aduerbes vbi, and vnde, supply the place of the Relatiue, and agree to his Antecedent: as,

Ter. Sive adeò digna res est, vbi nervos intendas mos, i. in quâ.

Eum causam dicere priùs, vnde petitur aurum. i. a quo.

## To an Adjectiue.

Tàm, quàm. This Aduerbe quàm agreeth to the positiue: as,

Tàm bonus, quàm sapiens.

To the Comparatiue, eyther by following one, or being put betweene two: as,

Non quicquam facio libentiùs, quàm scribo.
Serùs, quàm crudeliùs factum.

To

To the superlative: as, habere quàm laxissimas habenas.

Quàm celerrimè mittere.

Vt, agreeth to the superlative degree, and sometimes tam: vt diligentissimè potui. Res tam maximè necessaria. Vt.

Tantò, quantò, multò, longè agree to the Comparative, and superlative degree: as, tantò tu pessimus poeta, quantò tu optimus patronus. Longè periculosissimum. Tantò, quantò. Multò, longè.

Adverbes of Number agree to all distributives: as, Bis bina. Ter tria. Septenos octies solis anfractus. Of number.

In equall Comparison making, tam commonly goeth the positive, quàm before the positive, or superlative.

## To the Verbe.

The Adverbe agreeth to some one speciall mode of a verbe, as to the Indicative, or Subiunctive: or to more.

### To the Indicative.

Vt, signifying as, how or put for postquã, after that. Vt.

Donec, for quamdiù, as long as. Donec.

Dum, for quandiù so long as, or speaking of a thing present. Dum.

### To the Subiunctive.

Vt, signifying, that, to the end, although, or put for ne non: as, metuo vt substet hospes, i. ne non substet. Vt, τελικῶς.

Quoad, for donec vntill: as quoad exercitus huc mittatur. quoad.

Ne, for bidding: as ne metuas. Sometimes to the Imperatiue. Ne.

The

## The Concordance of the Coniunction.

The Coniunction agreeth especially to the moode of a Verbe.

These agree to the Indicatiue moode.

Etsi, tametsi, &c. Etsi, tametsi, etiamsi, quanquam in the beginning of a speech.

Ne, an, num. Ne, an, num, ioyned to a verbe of asking.

Vt for postquam, quemadmodum, sicut, or an interrogatiue.

These agree to the Subiunctiue.

Etsi, tametsi, &c. Etsi, tametsi, etiamsi, quanquam, often in the middle of a speech.

Quamvis. Quamvis, & licet most often.

Licet.

Cùm. Cùm, for quamvis although, for quandoquidem seing that, quoniam because,

Vt. Vt, for quanquam, although, & for vtpote, for as much as, because.

Ne, an, num. Ne, an, dum, signifying doubting.

## Of Regiment, or gouernment.

REgiment is, whereby one word is gouerned of another.

It is either of a Noune, or a Verbe.

The Regiment of a Noune is, whereby the case of a Noune is said to be gouerned.

A Case is gouerned either by selfe gouerment, or by dependance on another word.

Selfe gouerment is, when a word is put absolutely in some case, that is, by vertue of his owne signification.

Gouerment by dependence is, when a case being construed with an other word whether it be a word of number, or without number, is gouerned of the same.

A Case is gouerned of an other word by vertue of his { Signification. Comparison. Composition.

## The Gouerment of the Nom. Case.

The Noun case is gouerned by dependence of { Substantiue. Verbe. Coniunction. Aduerbe. Interiection.

## Of the Substantiue.

1. The Nominatiue case is gouerned of the Substantiue wherewith it is construed by apposition, that is, when they both belong to one thing: as,

Pater meus vir amat me puerum. Flumen Rhenus.

Marcus Tullius Cicero, vrbs Athenæ.

### Allæôsis.

The later Substantiue is sometimes put in the genetiue case by Allæôsis: as, vrbs Patauij, vrbs Antiochiæ.

2. The Noun Substantiue is likewise gouerned of the Pronoune Substantiue being of the first, or second person, by Euocation: that is, when the first or second person calleth out the third to make his construction, by vertue whereof it is changed into the first, or second person: as, mediate apposition.

Ego pauper laboro. Tu diues ludis. immediate apposition.

Ego tuæ deliciæ istûc veniam.

### Elliplis.

The first, or second person is sometimes concealed by Elliplis, as populus superamur ab vno. Nos, is vnderstood.

## Of the verbe.

The Nominatiue is gouerned of the verbe by comming before it, or after it.

1. The Nominatiue case of a nount, or pronoune Demonstratiue commeth before the verbe: as, præceptor docet.

Tu cubas supinus.

2. The Nominatiue case of the Relatiue commeth sometimes immediatly before the verbe: as, miser est qui nummos admiratur.

3. The Nominatiue case of the gerund commeth before (est) signifying necessitie, or duty, made in the English phrase by must or ought: as, Abeundum est mihi, to depart from hence belongs of necessity to me, or I must go hence.

Vtendum est tempore to make vse of time belongs of duty to vs, or, we ought to make vse of time, nobis is vnderstood.

## Note.

When, thing, or things come with an Adiectiue, it is made a Substantiue of the Neuter gender: and hath the construction of a Substantiue: as, multa me impediunt.

4. Verbs Substantiues, sum, forem, fio, existo.

Certaine passiues, dicor, vocor, salutor, nominor, habeor.

Existimor, videor. &c.

Verbs of gesture, eo, incedo, curro, sedeo, appareo, bibo, cubo, studeo, dormio, somnio, &c. do gouerne also a Nominatiue case after them: as,

Cræsus

Cræsus vocatur dives.

5. All Verbs almost, will haue a Nominatiue case of a Noune Adiectiue after them, without an Infinitiue moode betweene, agreeing with the suppositie of the verbe: as,

Nemo saltat sobrius. pij orant tacti.

6. If a Nominatiue case with his verbe haue after them an Infinitiue moode, and the case that followeth the Infinitiue moode belonging to the Nom: before the Accusatiue comming betweene, they must be both one: as, Hypocrita cupit videri iustos &c.

Ouid. Nec tu meus esse negari dignus es.

## Of the Adverbe.

En, & Ecce, Aduerbes of shewing doe most commonly gouerne a Nominatiue case: as, En Priamus. Ecce tibi status noster.

## Of the Coniunction.

Coniunctions Copulatiues, and Disiunctiues and these foure quàm, niſi, præterquàm, an, doe coople like Cases: as, Xenophon, & Plato fuêre æquales.

## Of the Interiection.

These Interiections, ô, heû, pro oh, doe often gouerne a Nominatiue case: as, ô, festus dies hominis, Heû priscafides. Proh nefas, oh paupertas fælix.

## The gouernment of the Genetiue Case.

The Genetiue case is { put Absolutely. / gouerned by dependence.

It is put absolutely foure waies.

1. The proper name of a towne of the singular number, and first, or second declension, answering Place.

Place. by, at, or in, to a question made by where, is put absolutely in the Genetiue case: as, Vixit Londini. Studuit Oxoniæ.

Humi, domi, &c. 2. Humi, domi, militiæ, belli are likewise vsed absolutely in the Genetiue case: as, procumbit humi bos.

Domi bellique otiosi vivitis.

Note.

Domi, in this construction admitteth no other Genetiue cases, but meæ, tuæ, suæ, nostræ, vestræ, alienæ: as, vetcor domi meæ, non alienæ. For otherwise it hath the constructiō of common nounes.

3. Wordes of any qualitie, or properties, or the prayse or dispraise of a thing: and also the description of a thing, comming after a noune Substantiue, or verbe Substantiue is put absolutely in the Genetiue case: as, Puer bonæ indolis, or bona indole.

Measure. 4. The measure of length, breadth, or thickenesse of any thing is put after Adiectiues, sometimes in the Genetiue case: as, Collum. In morem horti areas latas pedum denūm, longas quinquagenūm facito.

## Gouerned by Dependence.

The Genetiue is gouerned by dependence of a
- Substantiue.
- Adiectiue.
- Verbe — Participle. Gerunds. Supines.
- Adverbe.
- Coniunction.
- Preposition.

## Of the Substantiue.

1. When two Substantiues come together betokening diuers things, the latter shall be the Genetiue case of the subiect: as, Facundia Ciceronis. If they

they belong both to one thing, they are put both in one caſe, as aforeſaid.

## Allæôſis.

By Allæôſis, the Genetiue is changed into the Adiectiue poſſeſſiue: as, patris domus, paterna domus.

2. The genetiue caſes of the pronoune primitiues mei, tui, ſui, noſtri, veſtri, ſignifying paſſion, or ſuffering, haue the ſame conſtruction: as, Pars tui, Amor mei.

## Ellipſis.

Note that the former Subſtantiue is concealed by Ellipſis: as, Huius video Byrrhiam, ſupple, ſervum. Hectoris Andromache, ſupple, vxor.

## Allæôſis.

The genetiue caſe is ſometimes changed into an other caſe by Allæôſis: as, Ciceronis libri ſunt omne genus elegantia referti, for omnis generis. Idne autores eſtis mihi, for eius. Do id genus, for eius generis, quod genus, for cuius generis, is vſuall. Habuit duos gladios, quib. altero ſe occiſurum minatur, altero villicum, for quorum.

Secondly, theſe genetiues demonſtratiues mei, tui, ſui, noſtri, veſtri, noſtrûm, & veſtrûm, are changed into their poſſeſſiues meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter, which agreeing with the former Subſtantiue, gouerne after them certaine genetiues, which agree not to the poſſeſſiue, but to the demonſtratiue vnderſtood in the poſſeſſiue.

Now theſe genetiues are ipſius, ſolius, vnius, duorû, trium, &c. omnium, plurium, paucorum, cuiuſque, and the genetiues of participles: as, Ex tuo ipſius animo coniecturam feceris. Ipſius agreeth to the demonſtratiue tui vnderſtood in the poſſeſſiue tuo.

Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest, for mei.
Vester duorum eventus ostendit, for vestri.

3. An Adiectiue being changed into the nature of a Substantiue, i. put absolutely in the neuter gender gouerneth a genetiue case: as, Paullulum pecuniæ. Hoc noctis.

4. The genetiue case of the gerund is likewise governed of certaine other substantiues aforegoing: studium, causa, tempus, gratia, otium, occasio, libido, spes, oportunitas, voluntas, modus, ratio, gestus, satietas, potestas, licentia, consuetudo, consilium, vis, norma, amor, cupido, locus, &c. as, studium discendi. Causa videndi, tempus eundi.

## Note.

Note that this Gerund in di supplieth the place of the Infinitiue mood actiue comming after these, and such like Substantiues: as, studium discere, studium discendi. Tempus abire, tempus abeundi.

5. The gerund in DI goberneth also sometimes a genetiue case plurall, but more seldome a singular: as,

Illorum videndi gratia in forum me contuli.
Principium aliquod generandi animalium fuit.
Date crescendi copiam rerum novarum.
Illius videndi gratia huc veni.

## Of the Adiectiue.

The Genetiue case is governed of the Adiectiue by reason of his { Signification. Comparison.

1. By reason of Signification.

1. Adiectiues of Affinitie, desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, forgetting, with their contraries, do governe a genetiue case: as, Affinis sui picionis.

picionis, cupidus auri.

2. Adiectiues of likenes, and vnlikenes in proper-tie, or quality, gouerne a genetiue caſe: as Domini ſimilis es. Quem metuis, par huius erat.

To theſe Adde dignus, indignus, communis, immunis, alienus, which ſometimes gouern a genetiue caſe. as, militia eſt operis altera digna tui.

3. Many Adiectiues in idus, oſus, ius, rus, gus, vus gouerne a genetiue caſe.

4. Adiectiues in ax deriued from verbes doe gouerne a genetiue caſe, as, Audax ingenij. Tempus edax rerum.

Virtus eſt vitiorum fugax. vtilium fagax.

5. Adiectiues ſignifying plenty, fullnes, emptines wanting, gouerne a genetiue caſe: as, vacuus laboris. Plenus verborum.

6. Noumes Partitiues, or put partitiuely, doe gouerne a genetiue caſe, whereof they borrow their gender: as, quiſque, vnuſquiſque, vterque, vter, neuter, nemo, nullus, ſolus, medius, quicunque, quidam, vnus, aliquis, and quis for aliquis: as, nemo veſtrum. Aliquis noſtrum. vter eorum. Neuter horum.

7. Certaine Interrogatiues, and Noumes of nomber gouerne a genetiue caſe, whereof they borrow their gender: as, vnus, duo, tres, quatuor &c. primus, ſecundus, tertius, &c.

Quiſnam eorum, tres fratrum, quatuor iudicum, primus omnium.

8. Adiectiues of knowledge, ignorance, and deſire, gouerne the gerund in di, which hath the ſignification of the infinitiue moode Actiue: as. Cupidus viſendi. Certus eundi, peritus iaculandi. Gnarus bellandi. which gerund is poëtically turned into the Infinitiue moode: as, peritus medicari, for

medicandi.

9. The Participle transformed into the nature of an Adiectiue gouerneth a genetiue case, that is to say, when it loseth the signification of the verbe: as, appetens vini.

Indoctus pilæ. amantissimus tui. fidens animi. profusus sui.

2. By reason of Comparison.

Adiectiues of the Comparatiue, and superlatiue degree, put partitiuely, with these signes, of or among, doe gouerne a genetiue case: as, Cicero oratorum eloquentissimus.

Maior vestrum. Maximus nam nostrum.

## Of the Verbe.

The Genetiue case is gouerned of the verbe { Substantiue { Personall. / Impersonall. } Adiectiue, or other Verbes { Personall. / Impersonall. }

And that by reason of signification onely.

### Substantiue Personall.

1. This Verbe Sum signifying possession, owing, propertie, duty, or belonging to any thing doth gouerne a genetiue case: as hæc vestis est patris.

Insipientis est dicere, non putâram.

### Allæôsis.

By Allæôsis the Pronounes Demonstratiues are changed into their possessiues meus, tuus, suus noster, vester: as hic codex est meus. mentiri non est meum.

Hæc domus est nostra, non vestra.

### Impersonall.

Interest,

Interest, est, for interest, and this verbs refere do gouerne a genetiue case. as.

Interest omnium rectè agere.

Prudentis est multa dissimulare.

Refert multum Christianæ reipub. Episcopos esse pios, Et doctos.

Likewise an Accusatiue with a Preposition: as, Interest ad laudem meam.

To these are added these Genetiues tanti, quanti, magni, parui, quanticunque, tantidem: as Magni refert quibuscum vixeris.

## Allæôsis.

By Allæôsis the Genetiues Demonstratiues are changed into the ablatiue possessiues Feminine meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, cuiâ: as meâ, interest. tua refert teipsum nossè. Here is (parte) vnderstood.

## Adiectiue Personall.

1. Verbs of accusing, condemning, warning, purging, quitting, or assoiling gouerne a Genetiue case of the crime: as, hic furti se alligat. Admonuit me errati. Furti absolutus est.

2. Verbs that betoken to esteeme or regard doe gouerne a Genetiue case: as, parui ducitur probitas. Maximi penditur nobilitas.

3. These Genetiues put alone without Substantiues, tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, tantivis, tantidem, quantivis, quantilibet, quanticunque, magni, maximi, minimi, parvi, æqui, boni, and also, Flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, assis, huius, teruntij are gouerned of verbes signifying price, value, or esteeming: as, quanti mercatus es hunc equũ? certè pluris, quam vellem. Flocci te pendo. Non huius te facio, qui me pili æstimas.

Æqui boni consulo or facio, i. in bonam accipio partem.

4. Verbs of plenty, scarcenes, filling, emptying, loading vnloading, and diuerse such like gouerne a genetiue case: as, lactis abundat. Careo tui. Egeo aut indigeo tui.

Dextra saturata cædis, participo te mei Consilij.
Implentur veteris Bacchi pinguisque ferinæ.

5. Satago, misereor, misereſco, reminiſcor, obliviſcor, recordor, memini, & potior, gouerne often a Genetiue case: as, Rerum suarum satagit. Obliviſcor carminis. Potior vrbis.

6. Certaine verbes poëtically gouerne a Genetiue case: as, Absurdè facis, qui angas te animi. Exanimatus pendet animi. Despiciebam mentis. vel, crucior animi.

## Impersonall.

These Impersonals miseret, misereſcit, or miseretur, tedet piget penitet, pudet, dos together with an Accusatiue gouerne a genetiue case: as, miseret me tui. Pudet me stultitiæ.

Of the { Participle. Gerund. Supine.

As participles are Adiectiues, and gerunds and supines Substantiues in regard of certaine properties, wherof they partake with them: so in regard of signification and other properties they are verbes, hauing the same construction that their finites haue. Hence it is, that gerunds and supines are governed, and doe governe.

## Of the Adverbe.

Adverbs gouerne a genetiue case by reason of { signification. i. { Quantitie, Time. Place. Ithemelfe. comparison.

Of

## Of Quantitie.

Theſe adverbs, parùm, ſatis, abundè, affatim, gouerne a genetiue caſe: as, eloquentiæ ſatis. Sapientiæ parùm. Abundè fabularum audiuimus. Affatim vini in caſtris reliquit.

## Of Tyme.

Theſe adverbs, nunc, tunc, interèà, pridiè, poſtridiè goberne a genitiue caſe: as, nunc diêrum, tunc temporis, pridiè calendarum. Interèà loci.

## Of Place.

Theſe adverbs, vbi, vbinam, nuſquàm, eò, longè, quà, quò, vbivis, huccine, goberne a Genetiue caſe: as, vbi es hominum. quò terrarum abijt. Eò impudentiæ ventum eſt. Nuſquàm loci. Ho minimè gentium. Longè gentium.

### Note.

Quà is vſed ſometimes otherwiſe: as, Cic. At quàm honeſta, quàm expedita conſilia tua, quà itineris, quà nauigationis, quà congreſſus, ſermoniſque cum Cæſare, Engliſhed thus, partly concerning the tourney, partly concerning the nauigation, or rather thus, what for the tourney, what for the nauigation, &c.

## Of Likeneſſe,

This adverbe (inſtar) ſignifying equalitie, meaſure, or likeneſſe, goberneth a Genetiue caſe: as, Inſtar montis, inſtar omnium.

## Allæôſis.

By Allæôſis, this Adverbe (inſtar) obtaineth the vace of a noune, hauing the Prepoſition ad, before it: as Vallis ad inſtar caſtrorum clauditur. i. ad ſimilitudinem.

## Of Compariſon.

Adverbs of the Comparatiue, and Superlatiue degree,

degree, put partitiuely, do goberne a genetiue case: as, omnium elegantissimè, optimè omnium dixit.

## Of the Conjunction.

Coniunctions Copulatiues, and Disiunctiues, and these foure, quàm, nisi, præterquàm, an, couple like Cases, except the word, to which they are ioyned, goberne diuerse cases: as, Emi fundum centum nummis. & pluris.

## Of the Præposition.

This prepositiõ tenus, goberneth a Genetiue plurall, which in construction is set before it: as, aurium tenus.

## The gouernment of the Datiue Case.

The Datiue case is { Put Absolutely. / Governed by dependence.

### Put Absolutely.

1. The proper name of a place, being of the plurall number, or third declension is put in the Datiue case: as, Militavit Carthagini. Athenis natus est. Haruri.

2. These Datiues tibi, sibi, mihi, are sometimes vsed absolutely, not of necessity, but elegantly: as, Suo sibi hunc iugulo gladio. Ecce tibi status noster.

3. These Datiues tempori, luci, vesperi, seeme to be vsed absolutely in the Datiue case: as, tempori surgendum. luci laborandum. Vesperi cubandum.

### Governed by Dependence.

The Datiue case is gouerned by dependence of the { Substantiue. / Adiectiue. / Verbe, —— { Participle. / Gerunds. / Supines. / Aduerbe. / Coniunction. / Interiection.

1. When

## Of the Substantiue.

1. When two Substantiues come togeather signifying diverse thinges, the latter is often vsed in the Datiue case: as, herus tibi, vrbi maritus. Obtemperatio legibus.

Cervix cui lactea crines accepit.

2. The latter Substantiue is put in the Datiue case by apposition.

## Of the Adjectiue.

The Adiectiue governeth a Datiue by reason of { Signification. Composition.

### By reason of Signification.

1. All Adiectiues put acquisitiuely, that is to say, with these tokens to, or for, after them do governe a Datiue case: as, Supplex omnibus mihi proprium. Æqualis Hectori.

2. The Gerund in do, dependeth of Adiectiues likewise, that governe a Datiue case: as, oportunum augendo excercitum. Invtilis scribendo. Non sum solvendo. Potis, is vnderstoode by Ellipsis.

3. Adiectiues of affinitie governe a Datiue case: as, affinis suspicioni.

4. Of profite, and disprofite: as, labor est vtilis corpori.

5. Of likenesse, and vnlikenesse: as, Similis mihi, par, & impar huic.

6. Of pleasure, and displeasure: as, iucundus omnibus.

To these may be added, comunis, immunis, alienus, proprius, amicus, inimicus contrarius, infestus, infensus, molestus, gratus, gravis, charus, dulcis, bonus, Idoneus, &c.

7. Of diversitie: as, huic diversum.

8. Of Number: as, Nulli pietate secundus.

9. Adiectiues

9. Adiectiues of the passiue signification in bilis, and Gerundiues in dus, goberne a Datiue case: as, flebilis omnibus. Mos gerundus est Thaidi.

## By reason of Composition.

Adverbes compounded with these Prepositions, con, per, præ, ob, hoc goberne a Datiue case: as, Contubernalis, commilito, conservus, cognatus, conscius, confinis, obvius, obnoxius: as, mihi sum conscius. Obvius illi.

Pervius vlli.

### Note.

No case is governed of the Adiectiue that agreeth with it.

## Of the Verbe.

The Datiue Case is governed of the verbe { Substantiue, by reason of { Signification. Composition. } Adiectiue, by reason of { Signification. Composition. }

## Of the Verbe Sub. by reason of Signific.

1. Sum, signifying necessitie, or duty, expressed with these signes must, or ought, governeth a Datiue Case of the person: as.

Abeundum est mihi.

### Ellipsis.

This Datiue is most commonly concealed by Ellipsis: as.

Vtendum est ætate, cito pede labitur ætas.

2. Sum, put for habeo, governeth a Datiue case as, Est mihi mater.

3. Sum, put for afferre, governeth two Datiue cases, whereof the former may be the Nominatiue as, Sum tibi præsidio, or præsidium.

### By reason of Composition.

Sum,

Sum, being Compounded, except with the Adiectiue potis gouerneth a Datiue Case: as, mihi nec obes, nec prodes.

## Of the Verbe Adiectiue.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| The Datiue case is gouerned of other Verbs. | Act. | Perso. | by reason of | Signific. |
| | | Imperf. | | |
| | Pas. | Perso. | | Composit. |
| | | Imperf. | | |

### By reason of Signification.

1. All Verbes put Acquisitiuely, that is to say, hauing these tokens, to, or for after them, doe gouerne a Datiue case: as, Huic habeo, non tibi.

Note that many verbs gouerne two Datiues one of the person, and another of the thing: as, Hoc tu tibi laudi ducis.

2. Verbs, that signifie profit, or disprofit gouerne a Datiue case: as, Commodo, incommodo, noceo.

3. Of giuing, and restoring, doe gouerne a Datiue of the person and likewise their contraries, detraho, tollo, abrogo.

4. Of Comparing, as, Comparo, Compono, confero, præsto, excello, antecello, antecedo.

5. Of promising, or paying: as, promitto, profiteor, polliceor, soluo.

6. Of Commaunding, or shewing: as, impero, præsideo, præficio, prædominor, indico, monstro.

7. Of obeying, fauouring, resisting, as, obedio, servio, famulor, ancillor, pareo, ausculto, for obedio pugno, studeo, vaco, invigilo, incumbo, assentior, adulor, parco, palpor, blandior, repugno, resisto, placeo, displiceo. &c.

8. Of trusting: as, fido, confido, credo, fidem, habeo

habeo.

9. Of threatning, or being against: as, minor, indignor, iraſcor, minitor, interminor, retragor, aduerſor, inſidior, officio, &c.

## Note.

Many of theſe verbs gouerne a Datiue of the perſon, and an Accuſatiue of the thing: as, hoc tibi monſtro.

10. The Datiue case of the Gerund is gouerned alſo of diuerſe verbs, that gouerne a Datiue caſe: as,

Epidicum quærendo operam do.

11 Verbs of Praying gouerning two Accuſatiue cases, change the one of them into the Datiue: as, Induo tibi tunicam.

12. Certaine verbs of receiuing, puſhing, or taking away, gouerne a Datiue caſe: as, Eripuit illi virgam.

13. Miſereor, & miſereſco ſometimes gouerne a Datiue caſe: as, huic ſuccurro, huic miſereor.

Diligeiuie bonos, & miſereſce malis.

14. Thoſe verbes following hauing theſe ſignifications do gouerne a Datiue caſe: as,

Conſulo tibi, I giue thee good Counſaile.

Conſule ſalutituæ. haue care of the health.

Metuo, timeo, formido, cauco tibi I am carefull for thee.

Auſculto tibi, I obey thee.

Mitto, refero, do tibi literas, not to your ſelfe, but to you to giue to ſome other.

## Note.

Thoſe verbs following haue a diuerſe conſtruction.

Dono tibi hoc munus, dono te hoc munere.

Imperio

Impertio te plurima salute, Impertio tibi plurimam salutem.

Aspersit mihi labem, Aspersit me labe.

Instravit equo penulam, Instravit equum penula.

Ad amorem nihil potuit accedere, hoc accessit meis malis.

Illud constat omnibus. Illud constat inter omnes.

Adamas dissidet magneti, adamas dissidet cum magnete.

Certat cum illo, certat illi, (græcanicè)

Pugnat duobus, pugnat contra duos.

## Passiue.

1. A Verbe passiue sometimes governeth a Datiue case of the doer: as, Tibi fama petatur.

Nulla tuarum audita mihi, nec visa sororum.

2. Exosus, & Perosus signifying passiuely governe a Datiue case: as, exosus deo, & sanctis.

Germani Romanis perosi sunt.

## Impersonall Actiue.

These Impersonalles governe a Datiue Case. Accidit, certum est, contingit, constat, confert, competit, conducit, convenit, placet, displicet, dolet, expedit, evenit, liquet, licet, nocet, obest, prodest, præstat, patet, stat, restat, benefit, malefit, satisfit, sufficit, superest, vacat, fox pro otium est.

## Impersonall Passiue.

Verbes Impersonalles Neuters of the passiue voyce, governe the cases of their personals: as Parcatur sumptui.

## By reason of Composition.

1. Verbes compounded with satis, benè, and malè, governe a Datiue case: as, omnibus satisfacio.

1. Verbes compounded with these Prepositions, Præ, ad, ante, post, ob, in, inter, sub, de, re, con, for the most part goberne a Datiue case. But Præcedo, præeo, præuinco, præcurro, prævertor, doe oftenest goberne an Accusatiue, and præcedo alwayes.

## Of the Adverbe.

Certaine Adverbes doe goberne a Datiue Case, like as the nounes whereof they are derived: as, venit obviam illi. Canè similiter huic. Sibi invtiliter vivit.

## Of the Coniunction.

Coniunctions Copulatiues, and Disiunctiues, and these foure, quàm, nisi, præterquàm, an, couple like cases, except the Verbe goberneth divers cases.

## Of the Interiection.

These Interiections, hei, heû, væ, or veh goberne a Datiue case: as, Hei mihi. Heu misero mihi. Væ capiti tuo.

## Of the Accusatiue Case.

The Accusatiue case is { put absolutely. / governed by dependence }

### Put absolutely fiue wayes.

1. The measure of length, breadth, or thicknesse of any thing is most commonly put in the Accusatiue case after Adiectiues: as, turris alta centum pedes. Arbor lata tres digitos, liber crassus tres pollices.

2. Nounes that betoken continually tearme of tyme, without ceasing, or intermission, answering to (how long) are put in the Accusatiue case without a prepositions: as, Annos ferè quadraginta quinque fæliciter regnavit Eliza.

Adiectiue

## Allæôsis,

Likewise we say, Promitto in diem. Commodo in mensem. Annos ad quinquaginta natus, per tres annos studui. Ad tertium calendas, vel calendarum.

3. The space of place is commonly put in the Accusatiue case: as, Pedem hinc ne discesseris. Tam mille passus processeram. Abest biduii. Spatium, or iter, is vnderstood by Ellipsis.

4. Proper names of great places, as Countreys, and Iles are vsed with a preposition: as, veni per Galliam in Italiam.

5. The proper name of a place, answering to (whither) by the signe to, is put in the Accusatiue case: as, Eo Romam.

Note.

Domus and Rus doe follow the construction of proper names: as, Ego Rus ibo. Domum redeo.

Note.

If the place be neere by, the preposition ad, may be expressed: as, Ad Genevam pervenit.

## Gouerned by Dependence.

The Accusatiue is gouerned by dependence of the

- Substantiue.
- Adiectiue.
- Verbe, & his
  - Participle.
  - Gerunds.
  - Supines.
- Adverbe.
- Coniunction.
- Preposition.
- Interiection.

## Of the Substantiue.

When two Substantiues come together belonging both to one thing, they are put both in one case: as, Pater meus vir, amat me puerum.

## Of the Adiectiue.

1. All Nounes Adiectiues signifying any propertie, or passion, may governe an Accusative of the place, where the propertie is: as, æger pedes, Saucius frontem.

2. These Adiectiues, natus, commodus, incommodus, vtilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, governe an Accusative case with a Prepositiõ: as, natus ad gloriam. Ad nullam rem vtilis.

3. The Gerund in Dum is vsed after Adiectiues with these prepositions, ad, ob, propter, circa: as, hæc ad iudicandum sunt facillima.

4. Nounes of nomber governe an Accusative case with these prepositions, inter, ante. as primus ibi inter omnes.

## Of the Verbe.

The Accusative case is governed of the verbe { Substantiue. Adiectiue. } { Pers. Impe.

### Verbe Substantiue.

The Verbe esse will haue an Accusative after him alway, when it hath one before it: as, omnes fontes esse gelidiores. Otherwise it may haue such case after it as it hath before it, that is, such case as the verbe afore going doth governe: as Expedit bonas esse vobis, or bonis.

Nobis non licet esse tam disertis, or disertos:
Quo mihi commisso non licet esse piam.
Ovid. Sed nocere esse deum.

### Verbe Adiectiue Pers.

Verbes transitiues of what kind soeuer, whether they be actiue, common or deponent governe an Accusative case: as, Percontatorem fugito, studium

quibus

quibus arva tueri.

Inprimis venerare deum. Aper agros depopulatur.

2. Verbes Neuters, whoſe action doth paſſe into a word of their owne ſignification, or of a neere ſignification do cauſe it to be the Accuſatiue caſe: as, vivere vitam. longam ire viam. Duram ſervire ſeruitutem. Dormire ſomnum. Bibere vinum, Currere ſtadium.

3. The Infinitiue moode gouerneth before him elegantly an Accuſatiue caſe, with this Engliſh, that, before it, which being Latined by quòd or, vt, cauſeth the Accuſatiue to be turned into the Nominatiue, and the Infinitiue into ſome other: as Rumor eſt meum gnatum amare, or, quòd meus, gnatus amat. Iubeo te abire, or, vt abeas.

4. Verbs paſſiues, and Neuters abſolute ſignifying any property, or paſſion, may gouerne an Accuſatiue caſe of the place, where the property, or paſſion is: as, doleo caput. Candet dentes. Rubet capillos. truncatus membra bipenni.

Effuſas laniata comas, contuſaque pectus.

5. Verbs of asking teaching and arraying gouerne two Accuſatiue caſes, one of the perſon, and another of the thing, of which ſort are doceo, erudio, moneo, celo, conſulo, rogo, interrogo, poſco, oro, flagito, hortor, exigo, facio, præſto, voco, dico, appello, nuncupo: as, Doceo te literas. Conſulo te hanc rem. præſta te virum. Rogo te pecuniam. Quod te iamdudum hortor. exuo me gladium.

6. Theſe Verbs tempero, and moderor do ſometimes gouerne an Accuſatiue Caſe. Metuo, timeo, formido, cavèo te, ne mihi noceas, Conſulo te, i. peto a te conſilium.

Likewiſe theſe haue an Accuſatiue Caſe with a

Prepositiõ: consulo in te i. statuo. Refero ad te, i. to you alone, or especially. Refero ad Senatum, i. propono, scribo. Do ad te literas. i. to your selfe. Mitto ad te i. to you alone. Celo tibi rem, celo te de hac re Induo te tunica, induo tibi tunicam.

7. Valeo, gouerneth sometimes an Accusatiue case: as, Denarij dicti, quod denos æris valebant.

8. Reminiscor, obliviscor, recordor, memini gouerne sometime an accusatiue case: as, reminiscor, lectionem. Recordor puëritiam. Likewise memini de hac re, de armis, de te, i. mentionem facio.

9. Verbs of Comparing gouerne an Accusatiue sometimes with a prepositiõ: as, Si ad eum comparatur nihil est.

10. Certaine verbes that signifie profite, or displasite, goberne an Accusatiue case: as, vnum studetis omnes. Fessum quies plurimum iuvat. But commonly with a prepositiõ: as, Nihil curant præterquam, quæ ad ventris victum conducunt Epicuri de grege porci.

In hæc studia incumbite. Natura plus ad eloquentiam conducit, quàm doctrina.

11. Certaine verbes compounded with these prepositions, præ, ad, con, sub, post, ante, doe sometimes goberne an Accusatiue case: as, Præstat ingenio alius alium.

12. The Accusatiue case of the Gerund, is vsed after participles of the present tense, and verbes especially moobing to a place, with these prepositions, ad, ob, propter, inter, ante, & circa: as,

Cantabrigiam concessi ad capiendum ingenij cultum.

13. The Accusatiue case of the Gerund, or gerun-

dius

time is elegãtly vsed without esse, after these verbs, puto, existimo, censeo, loco, mando, curo, trado, habeo, video, dico, intelligo, arbitror, suscipio, &c. Existimo hanc rem tractandam.

Putavi ad te scribendum. Multa intelligo subeundapericula. Hoc onus a me reportandum suscepi.

14. Exosus, perosus, & pertæsus, having an actiue signification, doe goberne an Accusatiue case: as, Exosus lævitiam, hating crueltie. Vitam pertæsus. Immundam segnitiem perosæ.

15. The Accusatiue is sometimes governed of Verbes poetically, and figuratiuely: as, Verg.

Nec vox hominem sonat, ô dea certè.

Qui Curios simulant, & Bacchanalia vivunt.

Pastillos Rufillus olet, Gorgonius hircum. Or rather it is Enallage.

## Impersonall.

These Impersonals iuvat, decet, delectat, oportet, doe goberne an Accusatiue case: as, Me iuvat. Me oportet.

2. Attinet, pertinet, spectat, goberne an Accusatiue case with a Preposition: as, Nihil ad me attinet. Spectat ad omnes benè vivere.

3. Pœnitet, tædet, miseret, misereſcit, pudet, piget, goberne an Accusatiue case with a Genetiue: as, pœnitet me anteactæ vitæ. Miseret me tui, &c.

## Of the Adverbe.

Certaine Adverbes goberne an Accusatiue case, like the words whereof they are derived: as, propiùs vrbem, proximè castra. Hodie cedo, and amabo: as, amabò te. Cedò quemvis arbitrum. Cedò dextram

2. En, & Ecce of vpbraiding goberne an Accusatiue case onely: as, En habitum. En animum, & mentem.

## Of the Coniunction.

Coniunctions copulatiues, and Disiunctiues, & these foure, quàm, nisi. præterquàm, an, couple like Cases: as, Socrates docuit Xenophontem, & Platonem.

## Of the Præposition.

1. The Accusatiue is governed of such prepositions as doe serue to the same: as in Etymologie.

2. Prepositions in composition governe an Accusatiue case, which they governe in apposition: as, Præterea te insalutatum. Adibo templum.

3. Verbes compounded with a, ab, ad, con, de, e, ex, rehearse the same againe being ioyned to their case by apposition: as, In rempub. incumbe. Postquam excessit ex ephebis.

4. In, for erga, contra, and ad, signifying to, and into.

Sub, for ad, per, antê.

Super, for vltra, doe governe an Accusatiue case.

5. The Accusatiue case of the Gerund is governed of inter, and ante, in stead of a noune Substantiue; as, inter cænandum. Ante damnandum.

## Of the Interiection.

These Interiections, ô, heû, prôh, governe an Accusatiue case: as, me miserum, ô is concealed by Ellipsis. Heû stirpem inuisam, Proh dêum, atque hominum fidem.

## Of the Vocatiue case.

The Vocatiue case is governed of the Interiections ô, or prôh, most commonly concealed: as, Verg. O formose puer nimiùm ne crede colori. Prôh sancte Iupiter.

The

## The government of the Ablatiue case.

The Ablat. case is { Put Absolutely.
Gouerned by dependence.

### 1. Put Absolutely.

1. Words of any quality, or propertie, to the praise, or dispraise of thing are put in the Ablatiue case absolutely after a Noune Substantiue, or the Verbs Substantiues Sum, forem, existo: as, hoc ego sum animo.

2. The measure of length, breadth, or thickness of any thing is put after Adiectiues sometimes in the Ablatiue case: as, liber crassus tribus pollicibus.

3. Words signifying, part of time, answering to when, are put Absolutely in the Ablatiue case: as, Nocte Vigilas, luce dormis:

4. Words signifying continuance of time, are sometimes put in the Ablatiue case: as, Imperavit triennio,

Otherwise we say, In paucis diebus. de die, de nocte,

5. The space of place is sometimes put in the Ablatiue case: as, Abest bidui. Spatio, or itinere is concealed.

Abest ab vrbe quingentis millibus passuum.

6. Proper names of great places, as of countries and Iles, are put with a preposition after verbs signifying mooving or action in a place, to a place from a place, or by a place: as, vivo in Anglia. Proficiscor ex vrbe.

7. The proper name of a place being of the plurall number, or third declension, answering to the question made by where is often put in the Ablatiue case, as. Mulavit Carthagine. Athenis natus

est

est. Rure is likewise vsed.

2. The proper name of a place, with these signes from, or by, is put in the Ablatiue case, either without a prepositiõ, or with one: as discessit Londino, vel per Londinum Concabrigiam, Eboraco, vel per Eboracum profecturus sum iter.

Note.

Domus, and Rus are likewise vsed, but without a prepositiõ: as, Abijt domo. Rure reuersus est.

3. A Noune or pronoune Substantiue comming with a participle, expressed, or vnderstood, is put absolutely after verbs in the Ablatiue case, as, Rege veniente hostes fugerunt.

Audito rege Doroborniam proficisci. Me impulsore fecit. Salvo honore.

Note.

Where no participle is expressed (existents, which signifieth being, is vnderstoode)

Note.

The Participle is resolued into the Verbe, by these words, Dum, quum, quando, si, quanquàm, postquàm, &c. as, Dum veniret rex. Postquam audiretur regem Doroborniam proficisci.

The Ablatiue case is gouerned by dependence of the
- Substantiue.
- Adiective.
- Verbe, with his
  - Participle.
  - Gerunds.
  - Supines.
- Aduerbe.
- Coniunction.
- Prepositiõ.

## Of the Substantiue.

1. When two Substantiues come together belonging to the same thing, they shalbe put both in one

ene case: as, me impulsore id fecit.

2. Opus, and vsus signifying need or vse gouerne an Ablatiue case: as, Opus est præparato, they must needes make hast. Viginti minis vsus est filio.

3. The forme, or manner of a thing is put after Substantiues in the Ablatiue case: as, Nomine Parnassus.

Sum tibi natura parens, præceptor consilijs.

## Of the Adiectiue.

The Adiectiue gouernes an Ablatiue by reason of { Signification. Comparison.

## By reason of Signification.

1. All Nounes Adiectiues gouerne an Ablatiue case signifying the instrument, cause, or manner of doing: as curvus senectute. Pallidus ira.

2. The Ablatiue case of the gerund is vsed without a preposition after Adiectiues signifying the cause, or maner of doing, with these signes, of with, in, by: as, Incurvus senescendo. Metuendo trepidus. Defessus ambulando. Or else with one of these prepositions, a, ab, de, è, ex, cum, in, as, Deterrent a bibendo. Ab amando, Cogitat de edendo.

3. The forme or maner of a thing is put after Adiectiues in the Ablatiue case: as, Egregius forma.

Trojanus Origine Cæsar. Oculo invtilis vno. Facies miris modis pallida.

4. Adiectiues signifying fullnes, emptines, plenty, or wanting, doe gouerne most commonly an Ablatiue case: as, Copijs abundans. crura thimo plena, amor melle, & felle est fæcundissimus:

5. Nounes

5. Nomen Partitiues, gouerne an Ablatiue case with these Prepositions, E, de, extra, est deus è vobis alter. Solus de superis. Vnus ex illis.

6. Nomen of Number in some sence goverue an Ablatiue case with a prepositiou: as, Primus ab Hercule. A Jove tertius Atlas.

7. Adiectiues of diuersitie goberne an Ablatiue case with a Prepositiou: as, Alter ab illo. Aliud ab hoc. Diuersus ab isto.

8. Dignus, indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, fretus, extoris, goberne an Ablatiue case: as, dignus honore. Virtute præditus. Captus oculis. Pauscis contentus. Tuo iudicio fretus.

9. Comunis, immunis, alienus, doe sometimes goberne an Ablatiue case with a prepositiou: as, hoc mihi secum commune est. Immunes ab illis malis fumus. Non alienus a Scevolæ studijs.

10. All Adiectiues signifying any passion, or propertie doe goberne an Ablatiue case, signifying the place, where the propertie, or passion is: as, æger pedibus, saucius fronte.

By reason of Comparison.

Adiectiues of the Comparatiue degree, having than, or by, after them, cause the word following to be the Ablatiue case: as,

Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum. i. quàm aurum, quàm virtutes. Vno pede altior.

## Of the Verbe.

The Ablatiue case is goberned of the Verbe by reason of { Signification. Compositiou.

### By reason of Signification.

1. All verbes goberne an Ablatiue case of the Instrument, with the signe (with) before it: as ferit, cum gladio.

5. Likewise all verbes governe an Ablatiue case of the cause, or of the maner of doing, and that either without a prepositiō most commonly, and sometimes with one: as, Vehementer ira excandui. Metu frangitur. Mira celeritate rem peregit. Baccharis præ ebrietate. Summa cum humanitate tractavit hominem.

5. The Ablatiue case of the Gerund is in like maner governed; as, scribendo disces scribere: and the gerundiue with his Substantiues: as, legendis veteribus proficis.

4. Verbes of accusing, condemning, warning, purging, quitting, doe sometimes governe an Ablatiue case of the crime, and that eyther without a preposition, or with one: as, Si in me iniquus es, vide, ne condemnabo ego eodem re crimine.

5. Vterque, nullus, alter, vter, neuter, alius, ambo, & the superlatiue degree are governed of such verbes, in the Ablatiue case, eyther with a preposition, or without one: as, Accusas me homicidij, vel furti, an vtroque, siue de vtroque.

Ambobus, vel de ambobus. Neutro, vel de neutro. De plurimis simul accusaris.

6. Potior, and æstimo doe oftentimes governe an Ablatiue case: as, Potior voto. Magno vbique virtus æstimanda est.

7. These verbes, vror, abutor, fruor, fungor, nitor, epulor, dignor, fruiscor, vescor, victito, viuo, gaudeo, lætor, glorior, delector, muto, supersedeo, munero, communico, impertio, impertior, prosequor, afficio, &c.

8. Verbes that haue the force of comparison, and exceeding, doe governe an Ablatiue case signifying the measure of exceeding: as, Deforme existimabat, quos dignitate præstaret, ab ijs virtutibus superari.

Præfero

Præfero hunc multis gradibus.

9. Mereor, with these Adverbes, benè, malè, melius, peius, optimè, pessimè, goberne an Ablatiue case with a prepositiõ: as, De me nunquam benè meritus es.

10. Verbes of plentie, or scarcenes, filling, emptying, loading, with divers such like, most commonly governe an Ablatiue case: as, Abundare præceptis. Carere virtute. Spoliavit me bonis omnibus. Levabo te hoc onere.

Such like verbes, are expleo, onero, exinanio, vacuo, abundo, egeo, indigeo, expedio, fraudo, orbo, interdico, viduo, abstineo, emungo, discrepo, privo, &c.

11. Verbes of buying, selling, valuing or prizing doe goberne an Ablatiue case: as, Ædes centum minis revendit. Emit Paullulo. Multo sanguine, ac vulneribus ea victoria stetit.

12. Vili, pabulo, minimo, magno, nimio, dimidio, duplo, are vsed often without Substantiues in the Ablatiue case: as, Redime te captum quàm queas minimo. Vili venit triticum.

13. Verbes of comparing goberne an Ablatiue with a prepositiõ: as, Comparo Vergilium cum Homero.

14. Polleo alwayes, and Valeo most commonly governes an Ablatiue case of the price: as, Ne obolo valet.

Ingenio pollet, cui vim natura negavit.

15. Verbes of removing, distance, or taking away goverue an Ablatiue case: with these prepositions a, ab, e, ex, or de: as, Accepit literas a Petro.

16. Verbs Neuters Absolute do often governe an Ablatiue case of their owne, or of a neere significatiõ: as Diu videor vita vivere. Ire recta via.

Morte

morte obijt repentina.

17. Verbs of Arraying gouerning two Accusatiue cases do sometimes change one of them into an Ablatiue: as, Induo te tunica.

18. Verbs of asking gouerning two Accusatiues, change one of them into an Ablatiue with a Preposition: as.

Ipsum obtestemur, veniamque oremus ab ipso.
Istam suspitionem ex illis quære.

19. All Verbs Neuters signifying any passion, or propertie, doe gouerne an Ablatiue case signifying the place, where the propertie is: as, doleo capite. Ægrotat animo, magis quam corpore.

## Passiue.

A Verbe Passiue gouerneth an Ablatiue case of the Doer with a Preposition, expressed most commonly: as, Vergilius legitur a me.

2. All other passiues gouerne such cases, as their actiues doe: as, Accusaris a me furti, Habeberis Ludibrio. Privaberis magistratu, dedoceberis a me illos mores.

3. Vapulo, væneo, liceo, exulo, fio, Neuters of the passiue signification, haue the Passiue construction: as, a præceptore vapulabis. Ab hoste vænire. Quid fiet ab illo.

Virtus parvo pretio licet omnibus.

4. Natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus, gouerne an Ablatiue case: as, bona bonis prognata parentibus. Sate sanguine divum. Quo sanguine cretus, Venus orta mari. Terra edita.

## Impersonall.

A Verbe Impersonall passiue hath after him an Ablatiue case of all persons singular and plurall with a preposition sometimes expressed, but most commonly vnderstood: as, quid agitur? statur. In ignem posita est, fletur, i, a, me, te, illo, nobis, vobis, illis. where it might haue breue made by the actiue, as, Quid agis? sto. In ignem posita est, flent.

## By reason of Composition.

Most Verbes with this signe from, compounded with re, and se, doe gouerne an Ablatiue case: as, Redit venatu.

2. A verbe compound sometime gouerneth an Ablatiue case of the Preposition, that it is compounded with all: as exeo domo. Detrudunt naves scopulo.

## Of the Adverbe.

Adverbs of the Comparatiue and Superlatiue degree gouerne such case, as the wordes that they come of; as, propiùs illo.

Magis Velim. Omnibus gemmis granum hordei malim. where gemmis is gouerned of magis in Composition.

## Of the Coniunction.

Coniunctions Copulatiues, and Disiunctiues, with these foure, quam, nisi, præterquàm, an, coople like Cases except the verbe doth gouerne diuerse cases.

## Of the Præposition.

The Ablatiue Case is gouerned of Prepositions seruing to the Ablatiue case, as, in Etimologie.

2. The

2. The Preposition, in, and diuerse others are not expressed but vnderstood often by Ellipsis: as Habeo te loco parentis, i, in loco. Rostro cadit esca remisso, i, a rostro.

Apparuit illi humana specie, i. sub humana specie.

Id tempus creatus est consul, i, per id tempus.
Id Verò seriò triumphat, i. propter id.

## The Regiment of a Verbe.

The Regiment of a Verbe is, whereby the Infinitiue moode of a verbe is said to be gouerned.

In the Infinitiue moode are to be considered the. { Verbe Absolute. Gerunds. Supines. Participles.

It is { put Absolutely. Gouerned by dependēce on an other word

Put Absolutely.

## Of the Verbe Absolute.

The Infinitiue moode Absolute is put after nounes Substantiues poëtically, in stead of the Genetiue case of the Gerund: as, studium quibus aeva tuëri, for tuë idi.

Tempus erat cum a segetes incidere falce. For incidendi.

2. The Infinitiue moode is construed sometimes with a Substantiue in stead of the preter imperfect tense of the Indicatiue moode singular, & plurall:

as, Agere gratias, for agebat.

Omnes omnia bona dicere, & laudare fortunas meas, &c.

Omnes invidere mihi, & mordere clanculùm, ego autem flocci pendere.

3. The Infinitive mood is put after certaine Adiectiues: as, Audax omnia perpeti: dignus amari. Facile fieri.

Likewise in stead of the Gerund in di: as, peritus medicari.

## Of the Gerund.

The Gerund in Dum hath an absolute construction: as, Vlcera medicamentis curandum, or curare.

## Of the first Supine.

1. The first supine is commonly put after verbes, and participles, that signifie mooving to a place: as, eo cubitum. Venio visum.

2. It is sometimes put after other Verbes: as, Coctum ego, non vapulatum, conductus sum. Do vænum. Do filiam nuptum.

Note. It signifieth passiuely in { Neutropassiues. Being construed with * ni, and with est, vsed impersonally.

Note.

* Of Eo.

The Poëts doe change this supine into the verbe absolute by Allæôsis: as, Eo visere, Vado vidêre.

## Of the latter Supine.

The latter Supine is put after nounes Adiectiues: as, Facile factu. Turpe dictu. Dignum spectatu. Which supine may be turned into the infinitiue absolute: as, turpe dici, dignum spectari.

## Of the future in *Rus*.

The participle of the Future in Rus is vsed after Verbes mooving to a place, agreeing with the

Substantius

Substantiue aforegoing: as, Galli venerunt legionem Romanam oppugnaturi.

## Governed by Dependence.

The Infinitiue moode is gouerned by dependence of a { Verbe. / Coniunction.

### Of a Verbe.

The Infinitiue moode is goberned of diuerse Verbes, which being very common, I leaue to common obſervation.

### Note.

The Infinitiue mood is put ſometimes abſolutely, the former verbe being concealed by Ellipſis: as, Hæccine fieri flagitia? ſupple decet, oportet, par eſt. æquum eſt, aut aliquid ſimile. Ter.

Adeòne homines ex amore immutarier, vt non cognoſcas eundem eſſe, ſupple poſſibile eſt.

### Of a Coniunction.

Coniunctions Copulatiues, and Diſiunctiues, and theſe foure quàm, nisi, præterquam, ani couple the moodes and tenſes: as, Petrus, & Iohannes prædabantur, & decebant.

### Note.

Theſe Coniunctions doe ſometimes couple diuers moodes and tenſes: as, Et habetur, & referetur tibi a me gratia.

Greeke construction.

## [a] *Hellenismus*, or *Græcismus*.

1. *Ovid. Dum novus est, etiam cæpto pugnemus amori. pro cum amore.* So *Aristoph.* οὐ μαχοῦμαι σοι. *Frigida pugnabant calidis, humentia siccis, Ovid.*

2. *Hor. Desine curarum,* for *a curis. Isoc.* λῆγε τῶν πόνων.

3. *Hor. Alium sapiente, bonoque,* for *a sapiente.* ἄλλον σοφοῦ.

4. *Ter. Vt vobis decet,* for *vos.* πρέπει ὑμῖν.

5. *Plin. Canum degeneres caudam sub alvum reflectunt,* for *canes. Nigræ lanarum nullum colorem bibunt,* for *lanæ. Isoc.* τὰ καλὰ ζώων. σπουδαιοὶ τῶν γονέων.

6. *Vt,* signifying that, or to the end, agreeth to the Infinitive, in stead of the Subiunctive. *Pers. Ex pectore lævo excutias guttas lætari prætrepidum cor,* for, *vt lætetur. Verg. Pestis acerba boum, pecorique aspergere virus,* for, *vt aspergas. Isoc.* ὥστε πολλοὺς ἀμφισβητεῖν. *Hor. Vt melius, quicquid erit, pati,* for *patiaris.*

7. *Verg. Expleri nequit mentem. Os, humerosque deo similis. Nuda genu. Faciem mutatus, & ora* for *secundum mentem, &c. Isoc.* τὰ τῶν τρόπων ἤθη σπουδαιοι, i. κατὰ. So, *cætera lætus.*

Cætera

*Catera ſimilis, &c.*

8. *Athenas miſſus eſt erudiendi cauſa,* for *ad Athenas.* Ἀθῆναζε, *quò,* ποῖ.

9. *Deceſſit Athenis,* for *ab Athenis.* Ἀθήνηθεν, *Vnde,* ποθέν.

10. *Carthagini,* or *Carthagine,* for *Athenis natus eſt.* So *Romæ, Londini, &c.* for *apud Carthaginem, Romam, &c.* Ἀθήνησι, *vbi,* πού.

11. *Eſt,* for *licet. Verg. Cernere erat,* for *licebat. Gell. Vt multos videre eſt pecuniæ cupidos. Plin. De moribus benè ſperare eſt.* So the Greekes vſe ἐξὶ for ἔξεστι. *Demoſt.* ἰδεῖν ἐξὶ τοὺς νόμους, for ἔξεστι.

# Of Prosodie, or Punctuation.

Prosodie of letters and syllables in Etymologie Foure degrees of distinction in a Period.

The Accidents of Syntaxis are * Prosodie, or Punctuation, and Composition or Construing.

Prosodie is, whereby Sentences consisting of words construed are rightly distinguished, & pronounced.

A Sentence is Imperfect, or perfect.

1. Distinctio.

An Imperfect sentence doth not Absolue a sence by it selfe.

It is either a proper member of a speach, or a parenthesis.

The members of a speech are distinguished by a comma, or a colon.

A comma (,)

A Comma, is a short member of a sentence pronounced with a little pause, and without breathing, thus marked (,) distinctio.

2. Subdistinctio.

A Colon is a chiefe member, absolving a more perfect sence wherby a perfect sentence is distinguished according to the principall parts: It suspendeth or stayeth the breath, either taken, or continued with a longer pause, and it is Imperfect, or perfect.

3. Imperfect Colon (;) Perfect Colon (.).

The Imperfect is thus marked (;) Subdistinctio, The perfect thus (:) media distinctio.

Parenthesis ().

The Parenthesis is an intermingled sentence, not of necessitie, but for perspicuitie, or some other respect, thus noted ( )

4.

It must be short, and pronounced with such a tone

tone, or pronunciation, as it may be discerned from the proper parts of the sentence. Perfecta distinctio.

A perfect sentence, or period includeth a perfect sence. A Period (.)

It is begun therefore with a capitall letter, and ended with such a pause, as the hearer may revolue in minde the summe of the whole period. perfecta, & plena distinctio.

It is simple and directly propounded, and noted with a full point thus (.).

It is also propounded * indirectly, that is, by way of Interrogation, of Admiration, and Exclamation. * As also are the other sentences.

The former is called an Interrogatiue sentence It is thus noted (?) Interrog. point (?)

The second may be called an Admiratiue sentence, It is thus noted (!). Admirat. point (!)

To those adde the points, wherby words are noted, they are three.

A communtiue, noting the Compesition of words which are compounded of whole words, as Quicunque, All-seeing. Conuinctiue (-)

A Diuisiue noting the diuision of Syllables placed in the toppe of the Syllable diuided: as, poët. Nereïdes. Euolüisse. Diuisiue (¨)

Apostrophus noting the cutting off of a vowell from the ende of a word, thus noted in the toppe, mult' ille for multum ille. Tanton' mé, for tantone me. Apostrophus (')

## *Of a Periode.*

For the right ioyning of words and clauses in construction, it is necessarie first to know what a periode is: with the kinds and parts thereof, so farre forth as concerneth this purpose.

A periode is a perfect sentence in a speach.

It is either continued, or Disioyned.

The continued periode is absolued without distinction of parts: as,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.

Ter. Magnas verò agere gratias Thaïs mihi?

O quantum in rebus inane!

The Disioynted hath distinction of parts.

It is either simple or mixt.

The simple is parted into members, or particles by clauses.

The former is parted by one or more principall members, which are poynted with Colon perfect, or imperfect: as, Cic.

Mors honesta sæpe vitam quoque turpem exornat: vita turpis ne morti quidem honestæ locum relinquit. Idem.

Vtilius est absolvi innocentem; quam nocentem causam non dicere.

The simple is particled also by clauses imperfect, or perfect.

An imperfect clause is, when a case true or feigned having * many words depending on it, is parted from the verbe, that it commeth before, or from the word that it governeth, is governed of, or agreeth with, with a Comma *. as,

* for the most part.

* most commonly.

Stomachus calore destitutus, officio coquendi malè fungitur.

Plurima pro patria, pro se, pro principe dicunt.

Cic. Dixit Q. Tadius, homo familiarissimus patris istius.

Credere in deum, satis est ad beatam vitam.

Colui te, clarissimo genere ortum

Iam inde a prima adolescentia, patris adductus exemplo, bonarum literarum studijs incubuit.

Perfect clauses are of three sorts.

First, when divers parts comming togeather are concluded all under one Verbe, adjective, or some other word, and are particled each from other with a Comma: as, Zeugmatically.

Nihil te nocturnum præsidium palatij, nihil vrbis vigiliæ, nihil timor populi, nihil concursus bonorum omnium, nihil hic munitissimus habendi senatus locus, nihil horum ora, vultusque moverunt?

Plenos omni iniquitate, malitia, dolo, scortatione, avaritia, contentione, &c. Rom. 1.

De eorum desiderio, luctu, querelis, quotidiè tecum simul audiebam. Such may be called Zeugmaticall clauses.

Secondly, when the whole is first repeated, and then distinguished into his parts, which are parted from the whole and each from other with a comma: as, populus, alij in deliciis, alij in penuria, vivit. By prolepsis. Proleptical clauses.

Thirdly, when many members come togeather, with a proper verbe, being parted each from other with a comma, because the conjunction is * understood: as, Verg. By Asyndeton, i. the defect of the conjunction, called also Dialysis.

Ferte citi flammas, date vela, impellite remos.

Diligentia comparat divitias, negligentia corrumpit animum.

Rem pub. radicitus evertisti, civitatem funditus dejecisti.

dejeciſti. Such may be called dialyticall clauſes.

## Of the mixt Periode.

Moreover the diſcontinued periode, beſides thoſe members, and clauſes, is mixed with other particles, and may therefore be called a mixt periode.

* Largè ſumpta. It ſtandeth of two ſentẽces, viz the { Principall, explanative } *

The principall ſetteth downe the thing chiefely entended.

The explanative ſerveth to perfect the principall, with his parts, and is therefore diverſly ioyned, and intermixed with them.

The explanative is eyther a proper member of the principall, or an outward particle adioyned vnto it.

The outward particle is a Parentheſis, or word, in ſome ſort of like nature.

The parentheſis is a particle pointed with two halfe circles, excluding it from the principall, having the conſtruction whole within it ſelfe: as,

——— Princeps (quia bella minantur
Hoſtes (militibus vrbem præmunit, & armis.

Words having the force of a Parentheſis are of two ſorts.

Firſt, words of calling, naming, or ſpeaking to, in the Vocative caſe: they are ſevered from the words aforegoing with a Comma, and from the words following with another: as,

Debeo tibi, vir ornatiſſime, tot iam nominibus, prorſus, vt non videam, qui ſolvendo eſſe poſſum.

Credo ego vos, Iudices, mirari. &c.

Secondly, they are notes of explication &c. of which ſort are theſe, & ſuch like, id eſt, quod eſt, hoc eſt, ſcilicet, quaſi dicas, ſic, ita, vt eſt, par eſt, æquum

eſt,ait, inquit,idque hinc eſt,ita fit,primum, deinde, præterea, his de cauſis, huc accedit, &c. cic.

Imò, inquit, abs te ſatis accipiam.

Ego cum Patavij, hoc eſt, propè in conſpectu meo ſis, non accurram ad te?

Ex quo fit, vt ager Arpinas Arpinatium dicatur.

Deinde, vt communibus vtatur pro communibus.

The proper member or particle of the principall is Relatiue, or Coniunctiue.

The Relatiue particle explaineth the principall, or his parts with the * Pronoune Relatiue, with words of a * Relatiue nature, or with words that may be reſolued by a Relatiue.

* Relatum eſt ſantiæ.
* Quantitatis qualitatis. Loci.

It is particled from the precedent part of the principall, moſt commonly with a comma, and ſometime with a colon: as, Cic.

Ego potiſſimum ſurrexi, qui neque ætate, neque ingenio, ſimi cum ijs, qui ſedeant comparandus.

Marc. Craſſ. negabat vllam pecuniam ſatis eſſe ei, qui in rep. princeps eſſe vellet, cuius fructibus exercitum alere non poſſet.

Words of a Relatiue nature are, qualis, quantus, quot, quatenùs, quàm, quò, quantò, vbi, vnde. &c. Whoſe antecedents are moſt commonly vnderſtood by Anacolumebos: as

Et, quantum in ipſo eſt, diſturbat vitæ ſocietatem.

Non pol, qui quenquam plus amem aut diligam, eò feci.

Sive adeò digna res eſt, vbi nervos intendas tuos.

Words, that may be reſolued by a Relatiue: Ter.

Ibi tum matri paruolam puellam dono quidam mercator dedit, ex Attica hinc abreptam, i. quæ abrepta fuit.

Dixit Q. Tadius, homo familiariſſimus patris iſtius

ritus, i. qui erat &c.

The Continuatiue particle explaineth the principall, and his parts, with certaine Coniunctions, and Adverbs, or with words that may be resolued by the same: as,

Fauste, precor, gelida quando pecus omne sub vmbra

Ruminat, antiquos paulum recitemus amores.

O Thais, Thais, vtinam esset mihi pars æqua amoris tecum, ac pariter fieret, vt, aut hoc tibi doleret itidem, vt mihi dolet, aut ego abste factum nihili, penderem.

Words that may be resolued by a Coniunction, &c.

Rege veniente, hostes fugerunt, i. Dum, cum, postquam &c, veniret rex.

Colui te, clarissimo genere ortum, i. quia ortus es, &c.

The Explanatiue sentence is also
- Continued.
- parted into members.
- particled by clauses.
- mixt of
  - Principalls.
  - Explanatiues

The Affection of explanatiue sentences is their placinge.

They are placed sometimes before the principall or his parts, sometimes after, sometimes in the middle.

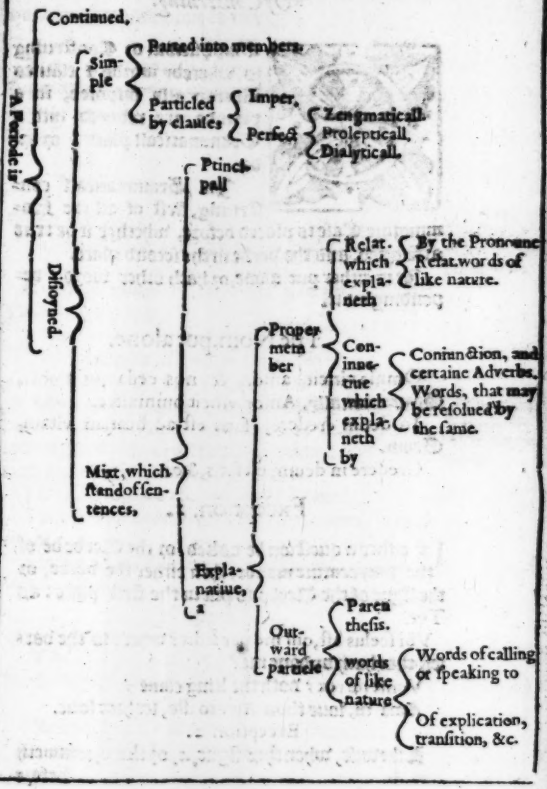
Quibus in rebus ipsi interesse non possumus in his operæ nostræ vicaria fides amicorum supponitur.

Qui mihi discipulus, puer, es, cupis atque doceri,
Huc aces, hæc animo concipe dicta tuo.

Quot capita, tot sensus.

At tu, funesti ne sim tibi muneris autor,
Nate caue: Dum resque sinit, tua corrige vota.

# A Table of the Periode.



## *Of Construing.*

Ompoſition, or Conſtruing is, whereby words & clauſes Rhetorically diſpoſed, in a periode, are reduced into a Grammaticall placing or order.

In Grammaticall conſtruing, firſt of all the Nominatiue Caſe is placed before, whether it be true or feigned, and the verbe in the ſecond place.

It is either put alone, or hath other words depending on it.

### The Nom. put alone.

Omnia vincit amor, & nos cedamus amori. Grammatically, Amor vincit omnia, &c.

In deum credere, ſatis eſt ad beatam vitam, Gram.

Credere in deum, eſt ſatis, &c.

### Exception. 1.

IF either a queſtion be asked, or the Verbe be of the Imperatiue moode, then either the verbe, or the ſigne of the Verbe is put in the firſt place: as Ter.

Vbi ſcelus eſt, qui me perdidit? where is the varlet, that hath vndone me?

Venit ne rex? doth the king come?

Ama tu, loue thou. Amato ille, let him loue.

### Exception 2.

Likewiſe, when this ſigne, it, or there, commeth before

before the Engliſh of the Verbe: as,

Eſt liber meus, It is my Booke. Venit ad me quidam, there came one to me.

## Note.

If the Verbe be impersonall, the ſigne it, or there, ſupplieth the roome of the Nominatiue caſe: as, oportet me legere Vergilium, it behoueth me to read Vergill.

## The Nom, with other words.

The Nominatiue caſe hath depending on it. The Dependence of the Nom, caſe,

1. Sometimes an Adiectiue onely: as,

Blandi homines ſæpè fallunt.

2. Sometimes beſides the Adiectiue another Subſtantiue: as,

Pater meus vir amat me puerum.

Spes impunitatis, eſt peccandi illecebra.

3. Sometimes * many caſes, and * words, that is, when an Adiectiue, or participle agreeing with the Nominatiue doth goberne other caſes after it, with their Adiectiues, Aduerbes, and prepoſitions, with their caſuall words: as, Ouid. * Depending all originally of the Nominatiue.

Eſt via ſublimis cælo manifeſta ſereno.

Voce novæ captus cuſtos Iunonius artis, Argus air, &c.

Ille ſummum fidei toties amiſſæ incommodum ſatis expertus, &c.

## Of the Verbe.

The Verbe is either put alone, or hath other words depending on it.

### Put alone.

Homo ridet. Tu dives ludis. Ego pauper laboro.

### With other words.

The

The Verbe hath depending on it.

1. Sometimes an * Adverbe: as, Libenter disce. Haud congruè loqueris.

2. Sometimes be Ides the Adverbe an Infinitiue moode: as, diù taceri non potest.

3. The Verbe, or his Infinitiue doe most commonly governe an Accusatiue after them, because most Verbes be transitiue,

Percontatorem fugito.

Note.

The Accusatiue with this english (that) is placed before the Infinitiue moode in construing, because they supplie the place of the nominatiue case, and the verbe finite: as,

Gaudeo te benè valere. I am glad that thou art well.

4. Sometimes the Verbe hath diverse cases with their Adiectiues, and Adverbes immediately depending on it: as,

Adspicit hunc Pentheus oculis.

Speras hoc tibi laudi fore.

Dedit vestem purpuream mihi non poscenti pignori sua sponte, te præsente, propria manu.

Note.

The Accusatiue in Construing is next after the Adverbe, placed immediately after the verbe, and then the * Datiue, lastly the Ablatiue: But the genetiue, and the case by apposition next after their former Substantiues.

5. Sometimes it hath many * cases, or words depending on it, that is, when an Adiectiue, or participle agreeing with the Accusatiue, doe governe other cases after them, with their Adiectiues, Adverbs, and prepositions, with their casuall words: as, Ille per Aonias fama celeberrimus vrbes.

Irreprehensa

* The epithite to the verbe, as the Adiectiue is to the Substantiue. The Dependents of the verbe.

* And the datiue of the person, before the datiue of the thing.

* Depending all originally of the verbe.

Irreprehensa dabat populo responsa petenti. Ovid. Nam duo magnorum viridi coëuntia sylva.
Corpora serpentum baculi violaverat ictu.

——— ignemque vomentes
Ambrosiæ succo saturos præsepibus altis
Quadrupedes ducunt.

Ille summum toties violatæ fidei incommodum satis expertus, dedit mihi non poscenti quicquam omnino vestem purpuream pignori sponte sua, te præsente, propria manu.

Grammatically.

Ille expertus satis summum incommodum fidei violatæ toties, dedit purpuream vestem sponte sua mihi non poscenti quicquam omnino pignori propria manu, te præsente.

## The Construing of words in a mixt Periode.

In a mixt Periode the principall sentence and his parts, must be seperated from the Explanatiue, and the explanatiues each from other, observing well what part, or parts of the principall, or of themselues they explaine, and then place them all in order, as is aforesayd.

## Of the Parenthesis.

The proper members of the periode must be seperated from the parenthesis, and grammatically placed: as,

——Princeps (quia bella minantur.
Hostes) militibus vrbem præmunit, & armis.
Princeps præmunit vrbem militibus, & armis (quia hostes minantur bella.

Words of calling, or speaking to, are construed in the first place: as,

Magnum est hoc, vir ornatissime, humanitatis, & amoris tui in me argumentum.

Vir ornatiſſime, hoc eſt magnum argumentum humanitatis, & amoris tui in me.

Words of explication &c are in conſtruing placed next after the words that they expreſſe.

## Of Relatiue Particle, or Clauſe.

The Antecedent, or principall member muſt be firſt ſeparated from it, and the words Grammatically placed, then in like ſort the Relatiue particle: as,

Ita, quod mihi conſuëvit in cæteris cauſſis adiumento eſſe, id quoque in hac cauſa deficit. Gram.

Ita, id deficit quoque in hac cauſa, quod conſuëvit eſſe mihi adiumento in cæteris cauſſis.

Hoc tibi perſuaſum eſſe cupio, quæcunque a vetere neceſſitudine expectari officia ſolent, ea tibi, a me, ſiqua tui dabitur facultas ornandi, præſtò ſemper futura.

Cupio hoc perſuaſum eſſe tibi, ea officia futura ſemper præſto tibi a me, quæcunque ſolent expectari a veteri neceſſitudine, ſiqua facultas ornandi tui dabitur.

When the Relatiue may be engliſhed by what as it goes before the Antecedent, ſo is it alſo conſtrued before it: as, Cic.

Forſitan quæratis, qui ſit iſte terror & quæ tanta formido, quæ tot, ac tantos viros impediat, &c. Peraduenture you may demand, what that terror may be, &c.

Quæ duæ res in ciuitate plurimùm poſſunt, eæ contra nos ambæ faciunt hoc tempore. What two things can moſt preuaile in a Cittie, &c.

Note.

Where note that in conſtruing the words of the Relatiue Particle, the Relatiue of what caſe ſoeuer,

soeuer must be placed before. If it be the Genetiue case, the other Substantiue whereof it dependeth is most conueniently * ioyned with it; And what words soeuer depend on the Relatiue, they are placed in construing before the Nom. and the verbe: as,

Fælix, quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum,

Princeps non est, cuius fructibus exercitus ali non potest.&c.

Quem in carcerem coniectum, & compedibus devinctum plangebant omnes. Cuius patriam Priënem cum cepisset hostis, &c.

* But construed before it, when his Antecedent is expressed: as Maiorem partem cuius officij refero, &c.

Quarũ laudã gloriã adamaris, &c.cic.

## Of the Coniunctiue Particle.

The Principall member, or clause must be separated from it, and the words Grammatically placed, then in like sort place the words of the Coniunctiue Particle: as, Ter.

Ait, si fidem habeat, se præpositum iri tibi apud me, ac non id metuat, ne, vbi acceperim, sese relinquam, velle se illam mihi dare. Gram.

Ait se velle dare illam mihi, si habeat fidem, se præpositum iri tibi apud me, ac non metuat id, ne relinquam sese, vbi acceperim.

Ovid. Tunc etiam quæ me subiectis excipit vndis,

Ne ferar in præceps, Tethis solet ipsa vereri.

The principall sentence,

Tunc etiam Tethis ipsa solet vereri, whose parts are explaned.

Tunc etiam Tethys ipsa, quæ excipit me vndis subiectis,

Solet vereri, ne ferar in præceps.

Note.

In Copulatiue, and Disiunctiue Particles, the first copulatiue, or Disiunctiue is construed in

the first place, then the other: as, ovid.

A dextra, lævaque dies, & mensis, & annus,
Sæculaque, & positæ spatijs æqualibus horæ.

Note.

When many Disiunctions come together.

The Copulative, and Disiunctive sometimes redound by Polysyndeton: as,

Athamasque, Thoasque, Pelidesque,
Aut tace, aut, si non vis, tace.
Aut sedeat, aut abeat.

## Examples, in mixt Periods.

Virgilli Ecc.

OPtarem equidem, vt hæ populares tempestates et seditionum procellæ, quibus patria nostra (tempore Edovardi regis Sexti) sordidissimorum hominũ scelere, & perfidia perculsa, et afflicta fuit, aut nunquam contigissent, aut (si fieri possit) illa memoria penitus ex omnium mentibus excideretur.

## The Resolution of the Periode And Construction of the wordes.

The principall member.

Optarem equidem, explaned by the Continuatiue Particle,

Vt hæ populares tempestates, & procellæ seditionũ, Quibus, &c.

The first part of this Explanat. viz. the Nominat. with his dependents, is explaned by the Copulatiue Particle,

[Et procellæ seditionum] & both are explaned by the Relatiue Particle,

Quibus patria nostra perculsa, & afflicta fuit scelere, et perfidia sordidissimorum hominum.

The first part hereof, i. the Nominat. with his dependents, is explaned by the Copulatiue particle Zeugmatically,

[Et afflicta fuit] The

The second part (scelere) is explaned by the Copulative Zeugmatically,

[Et perfidia perditissimorum hominum] and both are explaned by the Parentheſis.

[Tempore Edvardi regis sexti]

The second part of the principall explanative, i. the Verbe with his Dependents (aut contigissent nunquam) is explaned by the Coniunctiue particle,

[Aut memoria illarū excinderetur penitùs ex mentibus omnium] which is explaned by the Parentheſis,

[Si posset fieri]

## Resolution, and Construction.

SEd, quoniam præterita mutari non possunt, vt hæc macula proditionis a pernicioſissimis civibus patriæ nostrę impressa, altiùs insedit in populi Norfolciensis nomine, ad memoriam sceleris sempiternam infixa, quàm vt penitùs deleri, aut prorsus extir pari queat: facilè patior oblatam mihi hanc huius historiolæ conscribendæ facultatem, vt omnes intelligant, quibus initijs hi tanti tumultus excitati sunt, ac qua tandem virtute compressi: penitusque perspiciant vulnera illa, ac seditionum scelera, patriæ nostræ, non a bonis viris, et fortibus inflicta, sed a desperatorum hominum flagitioſissimis gregibus inusta fuisse. Nev.

The principall sentence, Continued.

Sed patior facilè hanc facultatem scribendi huius historiolæ oblatam mihi,

The first part hereof (sed) is explaned by the Coniunctiue partic. causall, 1. Principall.

(Quoniam præterita non possunt mutari) which is explaned by the

3. Copulat. partic. ſtanding of two imperfect clauſes.

1. Et hæc macula proditionis impreſſa patriæ noſtræ a ciuibus perniciosiſſimis, inſedit altiùs in nomine populi Norfolcienſis,

2. Infixa ad memoriam ſempiternam ſceleris (which are explaned by the

Reddituues partic. Zeugmat.

(Quàm vt queat deleri penitùs) which is further explaned by the

Diſiunctiue particle,

2. Principall. (Aut extirpari protſus)

The ſecond part hereof (facilè patior, &c.) is explaned

1. By the conſull partic.

(Vt omnes intelligãt initia) which is explan. by the Relatiue particle,

(Quibus initijs hi tanti tumultus excitati ſunt) and this by the

Copulat. partic.

(Ac qua virtute compreſſi tandem)

2. By the Copulat. particle,

(Perſpiciantque penitùs illa vulnera) which is explaned by the

Copulat. partic. Zeugmat. an imperfect clauſe,

(Ac ſcelera ſeditionum, inflicta fuiſſe patriæ noſtræ) explaned

1. By the Adverbe of denying,

(Non a bonis viris) which is explaned by the

Copulat. partic.

(Et fortibus)

2. By the Diſcretiue partic.

Sed inuſta a gregibus flagitioſiſsimis deſperatorum hominum.

Itaque,

Itaque, cum perdilectus, & fidelis noster famulus Alexander Ienkinson, qui literas nostras perfert, cum bona venia, favore; & gratia nostra, hoc Angliæ nostræ regnum excedere. & in Persiam vsque, vestrasque alias ditiones (dei benignitate) penetrare constituerit: Hoc illius institutum perlaudabile quidē, grato nostro fauore persequi, & promouere studuimus: id quod eò libentius facimus, quoniam hoc eius propositum, ex honesto studio commercij constituendi potissimùm, cum vestris subditis, alijsque peregrinis hominibus, ad regna vestra confluentibus, omnino exortum sit. Asch. Ep:

The Principall sentence Particled with imperfect clauses.

Itaque tum studuimus persequi hoc institutum illius, per laudabile quidem, grato nostro favore.

The first part (Itaque tum) is explaned by the Relatiue Particle (cùm perdilectus, & fidelis &c.) 1. Princip.

The first part whereof, viz. the Nom. with his dependents being an imperfect clause.

Cùm Alexander Ienkinson noster perdilectꝰ famulus) is exp. by.

The Copulat. part.

(Et fidelis) and both are explained by the Relatiue partic.

(Qui perfert nostras literas)

The Second part, viz. the verbe Zeugmat. with his dependents.

(Constituerit excedere hoc regnum nostræ Angliæ) which is partic. with two imperfect clauses.

1. Cum bona venia)

2. Favore, Zeugmat) which are explained by the Copulatiue

(Et gratia nostra) and then explaned by the
Copulat. partic.
(Et penetrare vsque in Persiam) which is also explan. by the
Copulatiue.
(Vestrasque alias ditiones) which are explaned by the
Parenthesis
(benignitate dei)
The Second part of the Principall,
2. Princip. (Studuimus persequi) which is explaned by the
Copulatiue,
(Et promovére)
The third part of the Principall
3. Princip. (Hoc institutum illius perlaudabile quidem, nostro grato favore, both which parts are explaned by the.
Relatiue.
(id quod nos facimus eo libentiùs) which is explaned by the
Causall part being particled with imperfect clauses,
Quoniam hoc eius propositum exortum sit omninò.
Ex honesto studio constituendi commercij potissimàm,
Cum vestris subditis,) which is explaned by the
Copulatiue partic.
(Aljsque peregrinis hominibus,) particled with an imperfect clause,
(Confluentibus ad vestra regna.

Tyresias (vt refert Ovidius, ni fallor) iter illâc, sic sors tulit, cuius (licet vates) ignarus erat, habiturus, violaverat, quanta vi patuit, duo corpora magnorum

magnorum serpentum, nigro tumida veneno, eoque mortifero, quale est omnium in regionibus, quæ sitæ sunt in occidentalibus mundi plagis, coëuntia, sicut et cætera animantia verno tempore coëunt, viridi sylva, quæ graminosa fuit, ac arbustis, fruticibis, vepribusque plena.

**The Principall sentence particled with imperfect clauses.**

Tyresias habiturus iter illâc, violaverat duo corpora magnorum serpentum, nigro tumida veneno, coëuntia viridi Sylva.

**The 1. part hereof** 1.
Tyresias habiturus iter illâc ) **is explained by the** Principall.
**Continuative partic. Adverb.**
(Sic fors tulit ) **which is explained by the**
**Relative part.**
( Cuius erat ignarus ) **which is explained by the**
**Parenthesis**
( Licet vates )
**The Second part.**
(Violaverat ( **is explained by the** 2.
**Relativ partic.** Principall.
( Quanta vi potuit )
**The Third part.** 3.
Duo Corpora magnorum serpentum, tumida nigro veneno ) **expl. by the** Princ.
**Copulative part.**
( Eoque mortifero ) **explained by the**
**Relative part**
( quale est omnium serpentum in regionibus) **explan. by the**
**Relat. part.**
( Quæ sita sunt in occidentalibus mundi )
**The Fourth part.**
(Coëuntia ) **explained by the** 4.
Princip.

Continuat.

Coniunct. part. Adverbe.

(sicut et cætera animantia coëunt verno tempore)

The first part.

5. Princip. (Viridi sylua) explaned.

1. By the Relat. part.

(Quæ graminosa fuit)

2. By the Copu. part which stands of two perfect clauses Zeug.

(Ac plena arbustis, fruticibus) explaned by the Copulative partic.

(Vepribusque) All which parts are explaned by the

Parenthesis

(Vt refert Ouidius) explaned by the Exceptiue part. (Nisallor)

Quare, cùm tibi maximas ago gratias, quòd ad me scripseris, quodque mihi haud paullo plus, quàm agnoscere debeam, tribuere videaris: quippe cùm ea referas ad iudicium meum, quorum ego te, si arbitrij mei res esset, Aristarchum libenter constituerem: tum verò sic velim existimes, siquis est, qui tuæ laudi faueat, qui tuam præstantem doctrinam in ore habeat, qui denique tuâ causâ summa et cupiat, et curet, eum esse me daturumque operam, vt animum aliquando res ipsa declaret.

## The principall sentence, Dialyticall.

(Quare cùm ago maximas gratias tibi) exp. by the Causall particle,

(Quòd scripseris ad me) explaned by the Copulat. partic.

(Quodque videaris tribuere mihi plus haud paullo) explaned

1. By the Electiue partic.

(Quàm debeam agnoscere)

2. By

2. By the Causall partic.
(Quippe cùm referas ad meum iudicium ea) explaned by the
Relatiue partic.
(Quorum Aristarchum ego constituerem libenter te) explaned by the
Exceptiue particle,
(Si esset res mei arbitrij)
The second Copulat. partic explaning the principall, is an Imperfect clause,
(Tum verò velim existimes sic, me esse eum) explaned
1. By the Conditionall partic.
(Si quis est) explaned by
3 Relatiue perfect clauses,
(Qui faveat tuæ laudi)
(Qui habeat tuam præstantem doctrinam in ore)
(Qui denique cupiat) explaned by the
Copulat. partic.
(Et cui et omnia summa tuâ causâ,
2. By the Copulatiue,
(Daturum que operam) explaned by
the Causall, or perfectiue partic.
(Vt res ipsa declaret aliquando animum.

SEd profectò, si me putas ab ineunte ætate ijs artibus, ac studijs non mediocriter esse delectatum, quibus ad humanitatem animus excoliur: æquerem te mihi esse oportet, nec suspicari, quia rarius ad te scribam, non ideò me tibi, quas debeo, gratias habere, nec diligere, et amplecti diligentiam, Industriamque tuam, quam quotidiè locas in antiquitate colligenda: cuius ego maiorem officij partem libenter acceptam refero benevolentiæ erga me tuæ.

The principall Sentence.

(Sed

(Sed profectò oportet te æquiorem esse mihi) expl.
1. By the Conditionall partic.
(Si putas me non delectarum esse mediocriter ab ineunte ætate ijs artibus) which is explaned by the
Copulat. partic.
(Ac studijs) which are explaned by the
Relatiue partic.
(Quib. animus excolitur ad humanitatem)
2. By the Copulat. part.
(Nec suspicari me non habere ideò gratias tibi) whose parts are explaned
The 1. part,
(Nec suspicari) explaned by
Causall partic.
(Quia scribam rarius ad te)
The 2. part.
(Me non habere ideò gratias tibi) explaned
1. By the Relatiue,
(Quas debeo)
2. By the Copulat.
(Nec diligere diligentiam tuam) whose parts are explaned,
The 1. part,
(Nec diligere) explaned by the
Copulatiue partic.
(& amplecti)
The 2. part.
(Diligentiam) explaned by the
Copulat. partic.
(Industriamque tuam) explaned by the
Relatiue particle,
(Quam locas quotidiè in colligenda antiquitate) all which are explaned
By the Relatiue partic.
(Maiorem partem cuius officij ego refero libenter
acceptam

acceptam benevolentiæ tuæ erga me.

## Valla. Cardinals, from whence other numbers are derived.

VNum, duo, tria, quatuor, quinque, ſex, ſeptem, octo, novem, decem, vndecim, duodecim, tredecim, quatuordecim, quindecim, ſexdecim, or ſedecim, ſeptendecim, octodecim, or duodeviginti, novendecim, or vndeviginti, viginti Vnum & viginti, Duo & viginti, (and ſo to * an hundred, ſetting the leſſer number before, with the Copulative) or otherwiſe, viginti vnum, viginti duo, &c. Triginta, triginta vnum, triginta duo, &c. Quadraginta, quinquaginta, ſexaginta, ſeptuaginta, octoginta, nonaginta, centum. Bis centum, ter centum, &c. or ducenti, æ, a, Trecenti, æ, a, quadringinta, quinginta, ſexinginta, or ſexcenta, ſeptinginta, octinginta, noninginta, or nonginta. mille. Duo millia, tria millia, &c. triginta millia, quadraginta millia, &c. Centum millia, bis centum millia, &c. Mille millium.

* After an hundred, the greater number is ſet before howſoever.

## Ordinals, whereby things are numbred according to their order.

PRimus, ſecundus, tertius, quartus, quintus, ſextus, ſeptimus, octavus, nonus, decimus, vndecimus, duodecimus, decimus tertius, decimus quartus, decimus quintus, decimus ſextus, decimus ſeptimus, decimus octavus, decimus nonus, viceſimus, & vigeſimus. Viceſimus primus, viceſimus ſecundus, &c. Triceſimus, quadrageſimus, quinquageſimus, ſexageſimus, ſeptuageſimus, octogeſimus, nonageſimus, centeſimus, primus, ſecundus, &c. & Tricesſimus, &c quadrageſimus, & quinquageſimus, &c. Ducenteſimus, trecenteſimus, quadringenteſimus, ſexcenteſimus, ſeptingenteſimus, octingenteſimus,

tingentesimus, noningentesimus, millesimus. Millesimus primus, secundus, &c. Millesimus centesimus, ducentesimus, &c.

## Numbring of things according to time.

Semel, bis, ter, quater, quinquies, Sexies, septies, octies, Novies, decies, vndecies, duodecies, tredecies, quatuordecies, quindecies, sexdecies, decies septies, decies octies, decies novies, vicies. Tricies, quadragies, quinquagies, sexagies, septuagies, octogies, nonagies, centies. Ducenties, trecenties, quadringenties, quingenties, sexcenties, septingenties, octingenties, nongenties, millies, semel millies, bis millies, &c. decies millies, vicies, tricies, &c.

## Distributiue numbers, noting the partition of things.

SIngvli, bini, terni, quaterni, quini, seni, septeni, octoni, noveni, deni, vndeni, duodeni, ternideni, quaternideni, quinideni, senideni, septendeni, octonideni, novenideni, viceni, viceni singuli, &c.

Triceni, quadrageni, quinquageni, sexageni, septuageni, octogeni, nongeni, vel nonageni, centeni. Ducenti, triceni, quadringeni, quingeni, sexceni, sextingeni, octingeni, noningeni, pro ducenteni, &c.

In prose these are vsed most commonly in the plurall number. In verse they are vsed often in the singular.

Numbers in arius, note not the multiplication of themselues but the number of other things not named: as, Centenarius lapis, not an hundreth fold, or double, but of an hundreth pound weight. Homo Centenarius, not an hundreth fold but an hundreth yeares.

Primarius, binarius, ternarius, quaternarius, quinarius, senarius, septenarius, octonarius, novenarius,

narius, denarius, vndenarius, duodenarius, tredenarius, quaterdenarius, quindenarius, sedenarius, septendenarius, octodenarius, novendenarius, vicenarius, tricenarius, &c. quadragenarius, &c. quinquagenarius, &c. sexagenarius &c. septuagenarius, &c, octogenarius, &c. nonagenarius, &c. Centenarius. Ducentenarius, &c. trecentenarius, &c. quadringenarius, &c. quingenarius, &c. septingentarius &c. octingenarius, &c. noningenarius, &c. millenarius.

## Liber & Autor ad Lectorem.

*IGnotum (lector) vultu dignare sereno,*
*Nec dubia rugas nectito fronte cavas.*
*Ipse fui quondam labyrinthus, corpus opacum,*
*Attica quo pubes sæpè sepulta fuit,*
*Flexibus ambiguis, varijs anfractibus illam,*
*Detinui, nulla noverat arte viam.*
*Nunc postquàm logici ductu Minoia fili,*
*Eruit è tenebris, vndique porta patet.*
*Sum domus, haud carcer. Non est, hîc sudor, & angor,*
*Lascivire licet, quà laborastis ad hûc.*
*Scande puër, facile est, facile est ascende puelle,*
*Non tibi nodus adest, nec tibi dumus obest.*
*De viridî fusim stillant hac ilice mella,*
*Quælibet & pomis pendula virga gemit.*
*Hoc capias horto calathis tibi lilia plenis,*
*Suaves hinc violas, carpe, puelle, rosas.*
*Artis ad oceanum libeat penetrare refusum?*
*Nil te Mæandrum posse juvare putes.*
*Effluit, et refluit, redit, it, sinuante Colubro*
*Torquetur, spiris volvitur inque suis.*
*Neve petas Ararim, dubio quæ flumine fertur,*
*Lento progressu stare videtur Arar.*
*Porrigor in rectum, rectà protendor in æquor,*
*Ceu rapidus Rhodanus provehor amne meo.*

Remige

Remige non opus est, propria namque arte ferere,
Ars mea natura est, deteahe vela note.
Qui me non victus longis erroribus actus,
Allisus scopulis exul ab arte fuit.
Arsque probatur iners, qua non comitante Minerva
Traditur, at cerebro pendeat ossa suo.
Grammaticus vere non est, sed grammaticaster,
Naturæ ignorans haurier omne penu.
Linaster est nostrar clarus, clarissimus atqui
Lilius est nostras, laurea serta gerat.
¶ Si tibi profuerim, nihil est plus ipse quod opto,
Hæc operæ spero præmia digna meæ.
Ventosam stolide laudem non aucupor vllam,
Certamen sophiæ stultius esse reor.
Adjecit stimulos mihi nec spes dira lucelli,
Psyttacus hinc cæpit discere χαῖρε suum.
Quod mihi compertum est, quodque experientia certa
Comprobat hic doceo jam meliore via.
Invidiæ non sum correptus tabe venenis,
Nec mea conturquet viscera livor iners.
Non prosunt domino, quæ fiunt omnibus artes
Communes, artis sæpe professor ait.
At Θεομίμεσθαι doctos dico, resonoque
Rege deo cogi, lege deique regi.
Hac sum confiteor sola ratione coactus
Tradere typis, quæ commoda certa ferant.
Si quid tu melius cognoscas optime lector,
Et me participes antipelargus eris.
Molle meum pectus fera ne pertentet Erinnys,
Nec noceant linquæ lurida tela malæ.
Non mihi sum soli natus sed vt omnibus essem
Vtilis auxilij debita solvo mei.
Si quid profuerim, mihi perdilecta juventus,
Gaudeo: tum animo percipe grata pari.

FINIS.